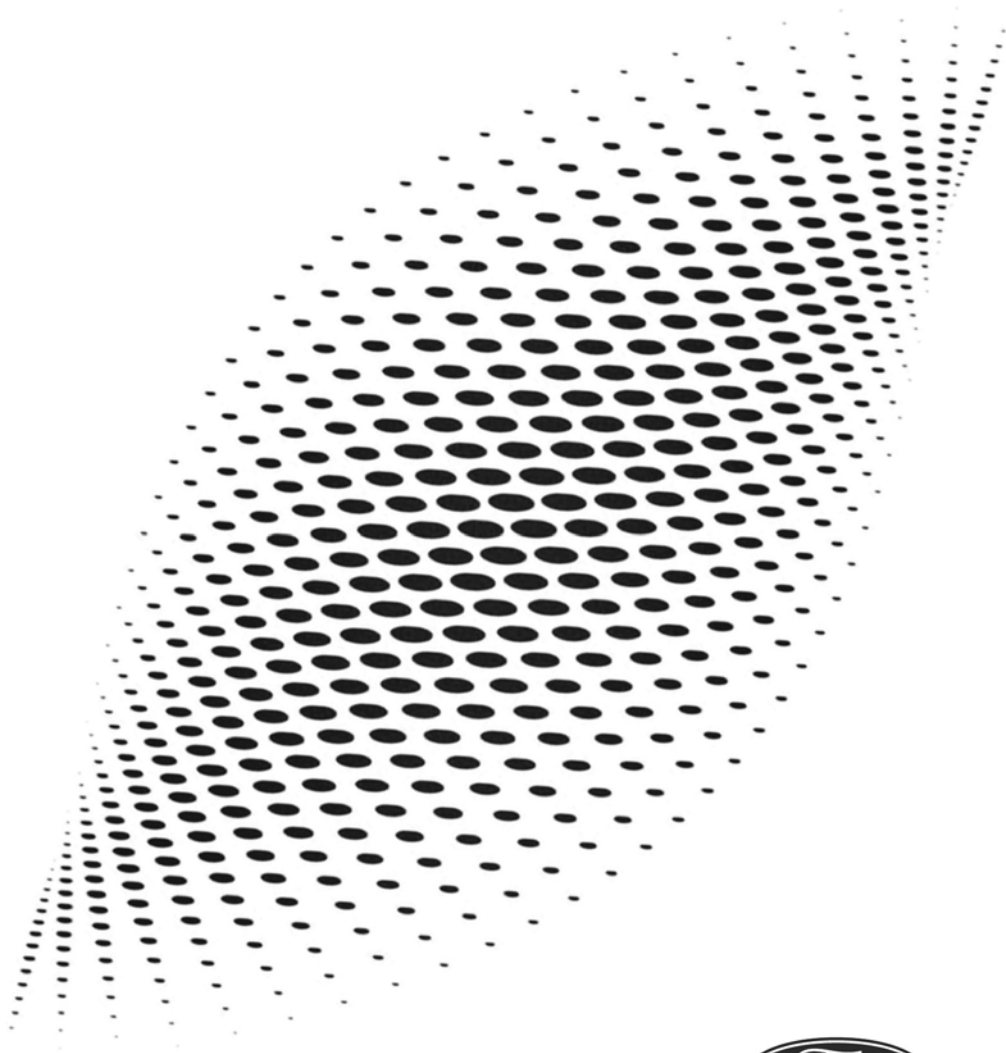


# FORD **MUSTANG MACH-E** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2024

All rights reserved.

Part Number: -202408-20240830144203

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including phthalates and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**





# Table of Contents

## Contacting Us

Contacting Us .....	13
---------------------	----

## Introduction

About This Publication .....	15
Using This Publication .....	16

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle .....	17
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster .....	19

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	22
Service Data .....	23
Event Data .....	23
Settings Data .....	24
Connected Vehicle Data .....	24
Mobile Device Data .....	25
Emergency Call System Data .....	25

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	26
----------------------------------	----

## Visual Search

Interior Overview .....	27
Exterior Overview .....	28

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	29
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	30
Child Restraints .....	31
Installing Child Restraints .....	32
Booster Seats .....	37
Child Safety Locks .....	39
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting .....	39

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions .....	40
----------------------------	----

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....	41
Sensitive Locking Mode .....	42
Automatic Locking Mode .....	42
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy .....	43
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height .....	43
Seatbelt Reminder .....	43
Checking the Seatbelts .....	45
Seatbelt Extensions .....	45

## Personal Safety System™

What Is the Personal Safety System .....	47
How Does the Personal Safety System Work .....	47
Personal Safety System Components .....	47

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work .....	48
How Do the Side Airbags Work .....	48
How Do the Knee Airbags Work .....	49
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work .....	49
Airbag Precautions .....	50
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats .....	51
Children and Airbags .....	51
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	52
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	55
Disposing of Airbags .....	56

## Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System .....	57
---	----

## 911 Assist

What Is 911 Assist .....	58
How Does 911 Assist Work .....	58
Emergency Call Requirements .....	58

# Table of Contents

---

Emergency Call Limitations .....	59
----------------------------------	----

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	60
Using the Remote Control .....	60
Sounding the Panic Alarm .....	61
Locating Your Vehicle .....	61
Changing the Remote Control Battery .....	61
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	63
Programming the Remote Control .....	63
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	63

## Phone as a Key

What Is Phone as a Key .....	64
Phone as a Key Limitations .....	64
Programming Your Phone .....	64
Using the Valet Mode .....	65
Using the Backup Start Passcode .....	65
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting .....	66

## Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....	68
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....	68
Autounlock .....	68
Autolock .....	69
Mislock .....	69
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....	69
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....	69

## Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry .....	72
Keyless Entry Limitations .....	72
Keyless Entry Settings .....	72
Using Keyless Entry .....	72
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....	73

## Keyless Entry Keypad

What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations .....	74
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code .....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes .....	74
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	75
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting .....	76
Keyless Entry Keypad Videos .....	76

## Walk Away Lock

What is Walk Away Lock .....	77
How Does Walk Away Lock Work .....	77
Walk Away Lock Limitations .....	77
Switching Walk Away Lock On and Off .....	77
Switching Walk Away Lock Audible Feedback On and Off .....	77

## Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work .....	78
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off .....	78

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Opening the Liftgate .....	79
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height .....	80
Closing the Liftgate .....	80
Stopping the Liftgate Movement .....	81
Liftgate Obstacle Detection .....	81
Liftgate – Troubleshooting .....	82

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions .....	84
----------------------------	----

# Table of Contents

---

Opening the Liftgate .....	84
Closing the Liftgate .....	84

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	86
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....	86
Security – Troubleshooting .....	87

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	89
Locking the Steering Wheel .....	89
Horn .....	89
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel .....	89

## Wipers and Washers

Wipers .....	91
Autowipers .....	91
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off .....	92
Reverse Wipe .....	92
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	92
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....	92
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades .....	93
Washers .....	93
Wipers and Washers Videos .....	95
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....	95

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....	96
Headlamps .....	96
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....	97
Autolamps .....	97
Exterior Lamps .....	98
Automatic High Beam Control .....	100
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	102
Exterior Lighting Videos .....	102

## Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	103
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....	103
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	103
Interior Lamp Function .....	103
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....	104
Ambient Lighting .....	104
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting .....	104

## Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows .....	105
Global Opening and Closing .....	105
Window Bounce-Back .....	106
Locking the Rear Window Controls .....	107

## Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions .....	108
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....	108

## Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....	109
Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....	109
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror .....	110

## Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview .....	111
Power Gauge .....	112
Speedometer .....	112
Vehicle Range Display .....	112
High Voltage Battery Gauge .....	112

## Instrument Cluster Display

Brake Coach .....	114
-------------------	-----

## Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer .....	115
-----------------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

Resetting the Trip Computer .....	115
Trip Data .....	115

## Remote Start

Using Remote Start .....	116
Remote Start Settings .....	116

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	117
Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	117
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	117
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	117
Switching Defrost On and Off .....	117
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	117
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	118
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off .....	118
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off .....	118
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	118
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	118
Setting the Temperature .....	118
Directing the Flow of Air .....	119
Auto Mode .....	119
Climate Control – Warning Lamps .....	119
Air Conditioning System Refrigerant .....	120

## Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter .....	121
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter .....	121

## Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions .....	122
Sitting in the Correct Position .....	122
Manual Seats .....	123
Power Seats .....	125
Heated Seats .....	127
Ventilated Seats .....	128

## Rear Seats

Manual Seats .....	130
--------------------	-----

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	132
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	132
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	132
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	132
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings .....	133
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	133
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	134

## Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function .....	135
Memory Function Precautions .....	135
Locating the Memory Function Buttons .....	135
Saving a Preset Position .....	135
Recalling a Preset Position .....	135

## Garage Door Opener

Garage Door Opener Introduction .....	136
Garage Door Opener Precautions and Frequencies .....	136
Programming the Garage Door Opener .....	137

# Table of Contents

---

Garage Door Opener Additional Assistance .....	139
--	-----

## USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports .....	140
Playing Media Using the USB Port .....	140
Charging a Device .....	141

## Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet .....	143
Power Outlet Precautions .....	143
Locating the Power Outlets .....	143

## Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	144
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions .....	144
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	144
Charging a Wireless Device .....	144

## Storage

Cup Holders .....	146
Glove Compartment .....	146
Glasses Holder .....	146

## Starting and Powering Off

Starting and Powering Off Precautions .....	147
Starting the Vehicle .....	147
Powering Off .....	147
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off .....	147
Vehicle Power Down Timer .....	148
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position .....	148
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting .....	149

## High Voltage Battery

What Is the High Voltage Battery .....	150
High Voltage Battery Precautions .....	150
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery .....	150
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery .....	151
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting .....	151

## Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions .....	153
Charging Equipment Overview .....	154
Charging Equipment Indicators .....	159
Locating the Charge Port .....	163
Charge Port Indicators .....	163
AC Charging .....	164
DC Charging .....	167
Charge Coupler Manual Release .....	169
Charging Settings .....	170
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging .....	174
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	174
Charging Your Vehicle Videos .....	176

## Electric Motor

Selector Positions .....	177
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) .....	178
Electric Motor Audible Warnings .....	179
Roll-Away Protection .....	179

## All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work .....	181
All-Wheel Drive Precautions .....	181
All-Wheel Drive Limitations .....	181
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting .....	181

## Brakes

Brake Precautions .....	182
-------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

Anti-Lock Braking System .....	182
Brake Over Accelerator .....	182
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....	182
Checking the Brake Fluid .....	182
Brake Fluid Specification .....	183
Brakes – Troubleshooting .....	184

## Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....	185
Applying the Electric Parking Brake .....	185
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....	185
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	185
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	185
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....	186
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....	186
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....	186

## Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist .....	188
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work .....	188
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions .....	188
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off .....	189
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist .....	189
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators .....	189
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting .....	190

## Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist .....	192
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....	192
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....	192

## Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work .....	193
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....	193
Using Auto Hold .....	193
Auto Hold Indicators .....	193

## Traction Control

What Is Traction Control .....	194
How Does Traction Control Work .....	194
Switching Traction Control On and Off .....	194
Traction Control Indicator .....	194
Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....	195

## Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work .....	196
Switching Stability Control On and Off .....	197
Stability Control Indicator .....	199

## Steering

Electric Power Steering .....	200
Steering – Troubleshooting .....	201

## Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions .....	202
Switching Parking Aid On and Off .....	202
Rear Parking Aid .....	203
Front Parking Aid .....	203
Parking Aid Indicators .....	205
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....	206
Parking Aids Videos .....	206

## Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera .....	207
Rear View Camera Precautions .....	207
Locating the Rear View Camera .....	207
Rear View Camera Guide Lines .....	207
Rear View Camera Settings .....	208

# Table of Contents

## 360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera .....	209
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work .....	209
360 Degree Camera Precautions .....	209
360 Degree Camera Limitations .....	209
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras .....	209
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines .....	210
360 Degree Camera Settings .....	210

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	212
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....	212
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....	212
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....	214
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....	215
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....	215
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....	216
Canceling the Set Speed .....	217
Resuming the Set Speed .....	217
Overriding the Set Speed .....	218
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....	219
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....	219
Lane Centering .....	219
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting .....	222
Predictive Speed Assist .....	223
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting .....	225
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....	225

## BlueCruise

What Is BlueCruise .....	227
How Does BlueCruise Work .....	227

BlueCruise Precautions .....	228
BlueCruise Requirements .....	229
BlueCruise Limitations .....	229
BlueCruise Settings .....	230
Switching BlueCruise On and Off .....	230
BlueCruise Alerts .....	230
BlueCruise Automatic Cancellation .....	231
BlueCruise Indicators .....	231
Automatic Lane Change .....	232
Lane Change Assist .....	233
Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting .....	234
In-Lane Repositioning .....	235
BlueCruise – Troubleshooting .....	236

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control .....	238
Selecting a Drive Mode .....	238
Drive Modes .....	238
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting .....	239

## One Pedal Drive

What is One Pedal Drive .....	242
One Pedal Drive Precautions .....	242
One Pedal Drive Limitations .....	242
Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off .....	242
One Pedal Drive Indicators .....	242

## Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System .....	243
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....	243
Lane Keeping System Precautions .....	243
Lane Keeping System Limitations .....	243
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off .....	244
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode .....	244
Lane Keeping System Settings .....	244

# Table of Contents

---

Alert Mode .....	244
Aid Mode .....	245
Alert and Aid Mode .....	245
Lane Keeping System Indicators .....	246
Blind Spot Assist .....	246
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....	249

## Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System .....	251
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work .....	251
Blind Spot Information System Precautions .....	251
Blind Spot Information System Limitations .....	251
Blind Spot Information System Requirements .....	251
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off .....	252
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors .....	252
Blind Spot Information System Indicators .....	252
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting .....	253

## Exit Warning

What is Exit Warning .....	254
How Does Exit Warning Work .....	254
Exit Warning Precautions .....	254
Exit Warning Limitations .....	255
Exit Warning Indicators .....	256
Switching Exit Warning On and Off .....	256
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors .....	256
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting .....	257

## Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....	258
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....	258

Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....	258
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....	259
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off .....	260
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors .....	260
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....	261
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....	261

## Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....	262
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work .....	262
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....	262
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....	263
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off .....	265
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors .....	265
Forward Collision Warning .....	266
Automatic Emergency Braking .....	266
Evasive Steering Assist .....	266
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....	267

## Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition .....	269
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work .....	269
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions .....	269
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations .....	269
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators .....	270
Speed Sign Recognition Settings .....	270
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting .....	270

## Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert .....	272
How Does Driver Alert Work .....	272



# Table of Contents

Driver Alert Precautions .....	272
Driver Alert Limitations .....	273
Switching Driver Alert On and Off .....	273
Driver Alert Indicators .....	273
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....	274

## Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions .....	275
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels .....	276
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating .....	276
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating .....	276
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight .....	276
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating .....	277
Calculating Payload .....	277
Calculating the Load Limit .....	278

## Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions .....	280
Opening the Frunk .....	280
Closing the Frunk .....	281
Using the Frunk Emergency Release .....	281
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover .....	281
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor .....	283
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points .....	283
Luggage Compartment – Troubleshooting .....	283
Luggage Compartment Videos .....	283

## Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions .....	284
------------------------------------	-----

## Driving Hints

Performance Vehicle Precautions - GT .....	285
Performance Vehicle Precautions - Vehicles With: Mustang Mach-E Rally .....	285
Driving in Cold Weather .....	285
Driving Through Mud and Water .....	286
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain .....	286
Driving In Sand .....	287
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	287
Electric Vehicle .....	288
Floor Mats .....	288

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Roadside Assistance .....	290
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions .....	291
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....	292
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	292
Post-Crash Alert System .....	295
Post-Collision Braking .....	295
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	296
Recovery Towing .....	296
Transporting the Vehicle .....	297

## Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....	298
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle .....	298
Emergency Towing .....	298

## Fuses

Fuse Precautions .....	299
Under Hood Fuse Box .....	299
Battery Fuse Box .....	304
Body Control Module Fuse Box .....	305
Identifying Fuse Types .....	308
Fuses – Troubleshooting .....	308

# Table of Contents

---

## Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions .....	309
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	309
Under Hood Overview .....	309
Coolant .....	310
12V Battery .....	312
12V Battery – Troubleshooting .....	313
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	313
Exterior Bulbs .....	315
Interior Bulbs .....	315

## Vehicle Specifications

Motorcraft Parts .....	316
------------------------	-----

## Vehicle Care

General Information .....	317
Cleaning Products .....	317
Cleaning the Exterior .....	317
Cleaning the Interior .....	319
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	321
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	321

## Body Styling Kits

Body Styling Kit Precautions .....	322
------------------------------------	-----

## Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage .....	323
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage .....	324

## Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label .....	325
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades .....	325
Information on the Tire Sidewall .....	326
Glossary of Tire Terminology .....	331
Tire Replacement Requirements .....	332
Using Summer Tires .....	334
Using Winter Tires .....	335
Using Snow Chains .....	335

## Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures .....	337
Inflating the Tires .....	337
Inspecting the Tire for Wear .....	338
Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....	339
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems .....	343
Tire Rotation .....	343

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	345
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions .....	345
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	345
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components .....	346
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	347

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	357
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview .....	357
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	358
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	358
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	359
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	359

## Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire .....	361
Wheel Nuts .....	362

## Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number .....	364
Installing the Vehicle Identification Card .....	364

# Table of Contents

---

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	366
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	366
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	366
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	366
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	366
Connected Vehicle Settings .....	367
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	367

## Vehicle Hotspot

Vehicle Hotspot .....	369
-----------------------	-----

## Audio System

Audio System Precautions .....	370
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....	370
Selecting the Audio Source .....	370
Media Control Buttons .....	370
Adjusting the Volume .....	370
Setting a Memory Preset .....	371
Muting the Audio .....	371
Adjusting the Sound Settings .....	371
Setting the Clock and Date .....	371
AM/FM Radio .....	371
Digital Radio .....	372
Satellite Radio .....	373
Audio System – Troubleshooting .....	375

## Center Display

Center Display Overview .....	379
Status Bar .....	379
Settings .....	380
Driver Assistance Menu .....	381
Rebooting the Center Display .....	381

## Voice Interaction

Ford Assistant .....	382
----------------------	-----

## Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In .....	384
Alexa Built-In Requirements .....	384
Signing In to Your Account .....	384
Using Alexa Built-In .....	384
Alexa Built-In Settings .....	384

## Phone

Phone Precautions .....	386
Connecting Your Phone .....	386
Phone Menu .....	386
Making and Receiving a Phone Call .....	387
Sending and Receiving a Text Message .....	388
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off .....	389
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device .....	389
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off .....	389
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off .....	389

## Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device .....	391
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® .....	391

## Personal Profiles

How Do Personal Profiles Work .....	392
Enabling or Disabling Personal Profiles .....	392
Creating a Personal Profile .....	392
Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile .....	392
Selecting a Personal Profile .....	393
Deleting a Personal Profile .....	393

## Navigation

Connected Navigation .....	394
Accessing Navigation .....	394
Navigation Map Updates .....	394
Adjusting the Map .....	394

# Table of Contents

---

Live Traffic .....	394
Setting a Destination .....	394
Waypoints .....	395
Route Guidance .....	396

## **Vehicle Software Updates**

Vehicle Software Updates .....	397
Software Update Settings .....	397
Software Update Indicators .....	398

## **Vehicle System Reset**

Performing a System Reset .....	399
---------------------------------	-----

## **Accessories**

Accessories .....	400
-------------------	-----

## **Ford Protect**

What Is Ford Protect .....	401
----------------------------	-----

## **Scheduled Maintenance**

Scheduled Maintenance .....	403
General Maintenance Information .....	404

## **Customer Information**

Rollover Warning .....	407
The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program .....	407
The Mediation and Arbitration Program .....	408
Reporting Safety Defects in the United States .....	408
Reporting Safety Defects in Canada .....	409
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment .....	410
Radio Frequency Certification Labels .....	410
Perchlorate .....	456
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	456

Mobile Communications Equipment .....	457
Federal Highway Administration Regulation .....	457
End User License Agreement .....	458
Export Unique Options .....	472
Warranty Information .....	472

## **Appendices**

Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	474
-------------------------------------	-----

# Contacting Us

---

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

## United States

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
PO Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone service provider)  
[www.ford.com/help/contact/](http://www.ford.com/help/contact/)

## Ford Credit - US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to an account manager, visit [www.ford.com/finance](http://www.ford.com/finance).

## Canada

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone service provider)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

## Australia

Ford Motor Company of Australia Pty Ltd.  
Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Mail Bag 5  
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061  
Telephone: (13 FORD) 13 3673  
E-mail: [foacust1@ford.com](mailto:foacust1@ford.com)

## New Zealand

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Bag 76912  
Manukau City 2241  
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)  
E-mail: [fnzcust@ford.com](mailto:fnzcust@ford.com)

## China - Imported Vehicle

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 400-690-1886  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## China - Chang'An Ford

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 800-810-8168  
Mobile: 400-887-7766  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## Asia Pacific Direct Markets (APDM)

E-mail: [apemcrc@ford.com](mailto:apemcrc@ford.com)

## Caribbean, Central America and Israel

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: [atnclien@ford.com](mailto:atnclien@ford.com)

## U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: [atnclien@ford.com](mailto:atnclien@ford.com)

# Contacting Us

---

## Argentina

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

## Brazil

Website: [www.ford.com.br](http://www.ford.com.br)  
Telephone: 0800-703-3673  
E-mail: [central@ford.com](mailto:central@ford.com)

## North Africa

E-mail: [nafcrc@ford.com](mailto:nafcrc@ford.com)

## South Africa

Telephone: 0860011022  
Email: [fordcrc2@ford.com](mailto:fordcrc2@ford.com)

## Sub-Saharan Africa

E-mail: [ssacrc@ford.com](mailto:ssacrc@ford.com)

## Puerto Rico

Ford International Business Development,  
Inc.  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

## Middle East

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship  
Center  
P.O. Box 21740  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 80004441066  
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi  
Arabia: 8008443673  
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi  
Arabia: 800850078  
Kuwait: 22280384  
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965  
1 898900  
Fax: +971 4 3327266  
E-mail: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

## South Korea

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003  
E-mail: [infokr1@ford.com](mailto:infokr1@ford.com)  
Emergency Dispatch Service call:  
080-300-3673

## Philippines

Telephone: 02-88669408  
Email: [emailus@ford.com](mailto:emailus@ford.com)

## Taiwan

Telephone: 0800-032100  
705 Zhonghua Rd., Sec. 1  
Zhongli District, Taoyuan, Taiwan, 32068

## Thailand

Telephone: 1383  
E-mail: [fordthai@ford.com](mailto:fordthai@ford.com)

## Vietnam

Telephone: 1800588888  
E-mail: [fordvn@ford.com](mailto:fordvn@ford.com)

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford mobile app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

**Note:** Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

## Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

## Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at [OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com](mailto:OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com).

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

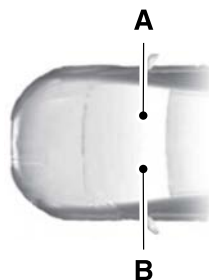
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

## Illustrations

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

## Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.  
B Left-hand side.

# Introduction

---

## Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

### Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

### Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

## Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

### Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford mobile app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

**Note:** We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

### Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com) or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit [www.z-order.de](http://www.z-order.de) or see an authorized dealer.

For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.



# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Airbag



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Blower motor



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Electric Parking brake



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Flammable



Front fog lamps



Fuse compartment



Hazard flashers



Headlamp high beams



Headlamps on



Heated rear window

# Symbols Glossary



Hill descent control



Horn control



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking lamps



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Stability control off



Trail control



Turn Signal



Windshield defrosting system



Windshield wiping system

# Symbols Glossary



Windshield wash and wipe

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

### Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 96).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 101).



Front fog lamps. See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 99).



Rear fog lamps.



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 98).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 98).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 96).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 315).

### Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 184).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 184).



Electric parking brake fault. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 186).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 184).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 193).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 193).

### Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 95).

### Electric Motor



Motor coolant temperature. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 310).



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 151).

### Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - engage. See **Engage** (page 238). See **Engage** (page 238).



Selectable drive mode - whisper. See **Whisper** (page 239). See **Whisper** (page 239).



Selectable drive mode - unbridle. See **Unbridle** (page 238). See **Unbridle** (page 239).



Selectable drive mode - unbridle extended. See **Unbridle** (page 239).

# Symbols Glossary



Selectable drive mode - rally sport. See **RallySport** (page 238).



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Warning Lamps** (page 201).

## Driver Assistance



Cruise control. See **Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control** (page 219).



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 219).



Speed Limiter.



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 242).



Lane keeping assist. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 244).



Lane keeping assist off. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 244).



Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 222).

## Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 43).



Airbag. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 199). See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 194).



Stability control system off. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 199). See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 194).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 359).



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 267).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off** (page 252).



Icy road conditions. See **Climate Control – Warning Lamps** (page 119).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 69).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 273).



Driver alert system 2.0 off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 273).

## Security



Hood release/ajar. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 309).

# Symbols Glossary

---



Liftgate release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 82).

## Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 313).



Ready to drive. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 147).



Hybrid/electrical system failure. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 151).

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 151).



External cord connected. See **Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps** (page 174).



Limited performance mode. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 151).

See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 151).

# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example battery charge level and tire pressure.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Where equipped, SiriusXM with 360L could use the modem. To disable, turn off the SiriusXM with 360L or Vehicle Connectivity setting. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 366).

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as the high voltage battery, throttle, and steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest

you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

# Data Privacy

**Note:** Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded.

However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## BlueCruise Data (If Equipped)

If BlueCruise is active in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, the system may record driver attentiveness, based on the direction of eyes and duration, and photographs of the driver seat area.

**Note:** No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 366).

**Note:** The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).



## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device** (page 389).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 399).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the battery shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

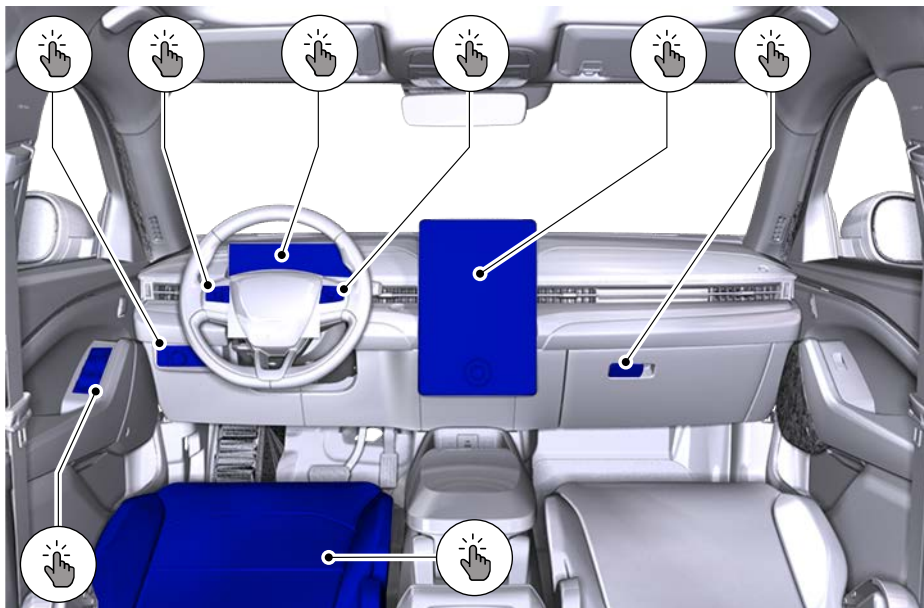
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

# Visual Search

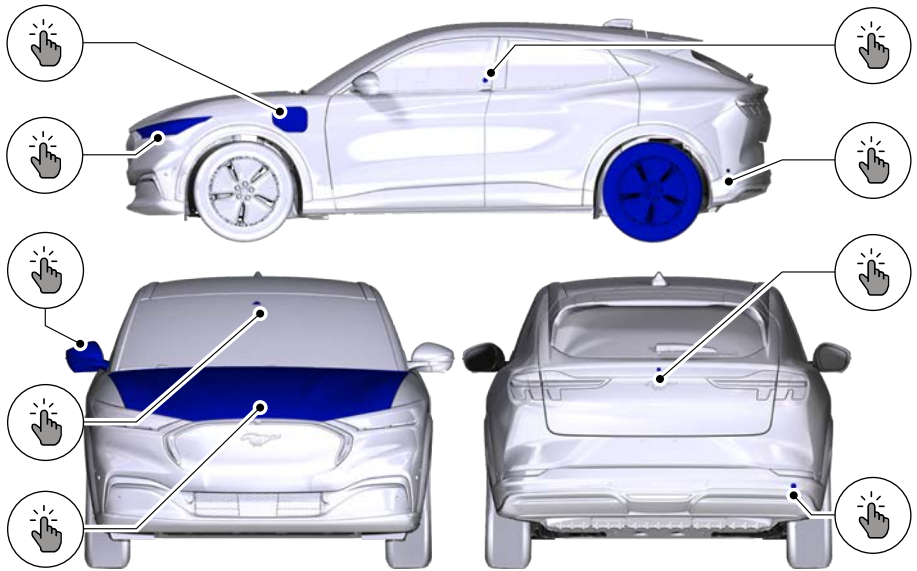
## INTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 96).
- B See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 214).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 111).
- D See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 382).
- E See **Center Display Overview** (page 379).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 146).
- G See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 122).
- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 109).

# Visual Search

## EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Locating the Charge Port** (page 163).
- B See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 72).
- C See **Tire Replacement Requirements** (page 332).
- D See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 209).
- E See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 203).
- F See **Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle** (page 280).
- G See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 265).
- H See **Folding the Exterior Mirrors** (page 109).
- I See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 96).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



When installing a child restraint with seatbelts:

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

# Child Safety

## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

### Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 29 kg (65 lb)	X	X
Over 29 kg (65 lb)		X

### Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 29 kg (65 lb)	X	X	X
Over 29 kg (65 lb)		X	X

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 18 kg (40 lb) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 1.45 m (57 in) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 18 kg (40 lb) and 36 kg (80 lb) and upward to 45 kg (100 lb) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 1.45 m (57 in) tall or greater than 36 kg (80 lb) or 45 kg (100 lb) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 1.45 m (57 in) tall, or 36 kg (80 lb). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

When possible, properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### USING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

**Note:** *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward-facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear-facing child restraint.*

Perform the following steps when installing a child restraint with seatbelts.



# Child Safety

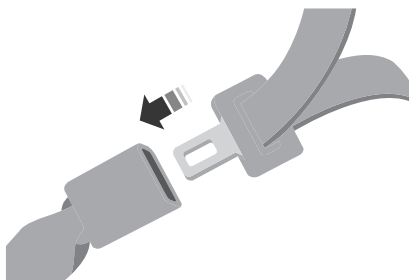
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp it and the lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating position until the latch engages. Make sure that you securely latch the tongue by pulling on it.



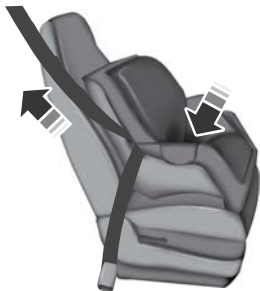
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the seatbelt out.

**Note:** The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The seatbelt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

## Child Safety

7. Pull the seatbelt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle helps to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place.

To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

### USING LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN



**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) system has three vehicle anchor points:

- Two lower anchors where the vehicle seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments. These attachments connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.

However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint if the lower anchors are not used. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

Follow the instructions later in this chapter on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

## INSTALLING A CHILD RESTRAINT IN A CENTER SEAT



**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 in) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 51 cm (20 in) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 2.5 cm (1 in).

If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

# Child Safety

## COMBINING THE SEATBELT AND LOWER ANCHORS FOR ATTACHING CHILD RESTRAINTS

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

## USING TETHER STRAPS

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

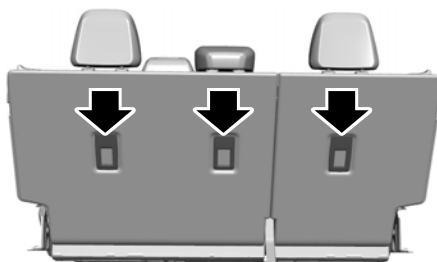
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Once you have installed the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint with the head restraint fully lowered. If needed, you can also remove the head restraints.



2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol.



3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

# Child Safety

4. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

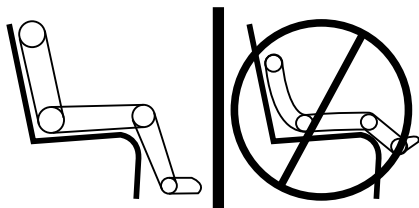
## BOOSTER SEATS

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint and meet the following criteria.

- Generally children who are less than 1.45 m (57 in) tall.
- Are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12).
- Are between 18 kg (40 lb) and 36 kg (80 lb) and upward to 45 kg (100 lb).

Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 1.45 m (57 in) tall, or 36 kg (80 lb).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer yes to all of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?

- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield.

If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head, as measured at the tops of the ears, above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high-back booster seat.

## Child Safety



If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high-back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder.

The following drawings compare the ideal fit to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

- High-back booster seats



# Child Safety

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not use any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



The control is on the driver door. It enables both the child safety locks and the rear window locks.

Press the control to switch the child safety locks and the rear window lock on. Press the control again to switch them off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch them on.

The child lock and rear window lock settings remain active when you switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

**Note:** To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Child Lock fault See manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- A shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, except driver seatbelt.
- Height adjusters at the front outermost seating positions.
- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost seating positions.



# Seatbelts



A seatbelt warning light and chime.

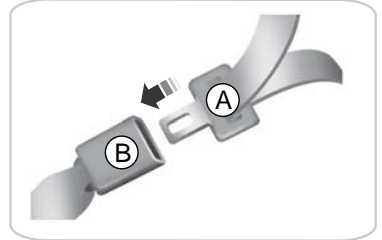


Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. In side crashes and rollovers, the pretensioners will be activated when the Safety Canopy is activated.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

### Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

# Seatbelts

## SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

### HOW DOES SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE WORK

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 8 km/h (5 mph) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.

If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

## AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

## WHEN TO USE AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Use this mode any time you install a child restraint in a front outermost passenger seating position or any rear seating position. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seat whenever possible.

**Note:** *Automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.*

## ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

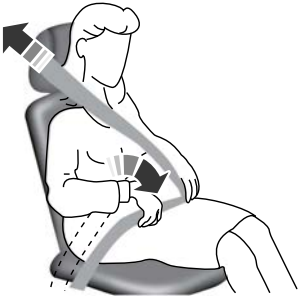
Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

# Seatbelts

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.

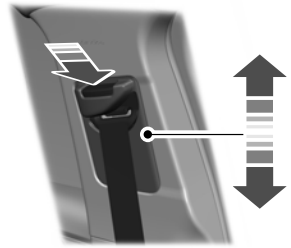


Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### HOW DOES THE SEATBELT REMINDER WORK



**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

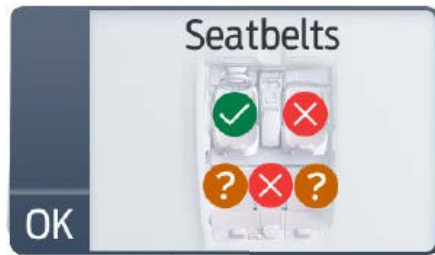


This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the power on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt.

# Seatbelts

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 22 km/h (14 mph).

**Note:** *To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.*



This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

**Note:** *If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.*

**Note:** *Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.*

## SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the power on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one-minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 22 km/h (14 mph).

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

## SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

**Note:** *The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position and the other seat is occupied, fasten the other seat.*

Read Steps 1-4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The power is off.
  - You close all vehicle doors.
  - You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.
1. Switch the power on.
  2. Wait a short period of time until the seatbelt warning tone switches off. After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, complete the procedure within 30 seconds.

# Seatbelts

- For the seating position you are switching off, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt four times at a moderate speed, ending in the unfastened state. After each unfasten, the seatbelt warning light switches on and off with each fasten.
- The seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.

This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS

To view the seatbelt status, use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel.



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Fault.
- D Seatbelt recently unfastened or for your seat and seats with occupant presence detection not fastened when you start your vehicle.

## CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check all of the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Shoulder belt height adjusters.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint LATCH and tether anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 317).

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

# Seatbelts

---



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by our dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

## WHAT IS THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM

An advanced safety system that protects occupants in frontal crashes.

## HOW DOES THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM WORK

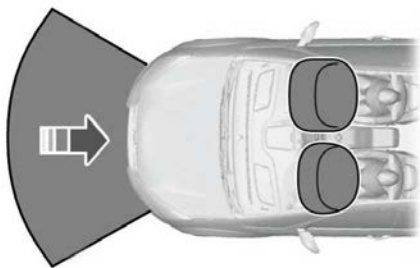
This system provides an improved level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, and one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

## PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium

compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



# Airbags

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front and rear seat backrest. In certain sideways crashes or rollovers, the airbags will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.



Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The rear side airbag will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat.

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests, as well as side airbags inside of each outermost rear seat backrest.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

## HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK

The driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the knee airbag based on crash severity and respective occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the knee airbag may deploy but the corresponding front airbag may not activate. It is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

## HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

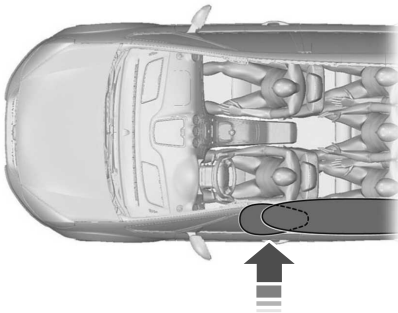


**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

# Airbags

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats.

In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy activates, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



The system consists of:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. They are identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy airbags will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## PROPERLY ADJUSTING THE DRIVER AND FRONT PASSENGER SEATS



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 25 cm (10 in) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat backrest, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

## CHILDREN AND AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Airbags



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

### HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

**Note:** When you first switch the power on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



The indicators are in the overhead console.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

**Note:** Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

# Airbags

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.

- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 55).

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

# Airbags

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center. See **Contacting Us** (page 13).

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Failure to follow this instruction may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which activates the following:

- Front and rear seatbelt pretensioners.
- Driver airbag.
- Passenger airbag.
- Knee airbag(s).
- Front and rear seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. This module indicates the readiness of the safety system by displaying a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster. If the warning light is not working, the system sounds a tone as a backup. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the power on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five tones. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The front airbags activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes. Front airbags may activate in rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts if the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The seatbelt pretensioners activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The knee airbag deploys based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The side airbags inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The Safety Canopy inflates in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

# Airbags

---

## **DISPOSING OF AIRBAGS**

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.



# Pedestrian Alert System

---

## **WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM**

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

### WHAT IS 911 ASSIST

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help.

For more information, visit [www.ownertoford.com](http://www.ownertoford.com).

### HOW DOES 911 ASSIST WORK

If a crash deploys an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or activates the battery shut-off, your vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected **Bluetooth®**-enabled phone.

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the battery shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone. SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides about 10 seconds to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator. The occupants in your vehicle are able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

During an emergency call the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service.

### EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

- SYNC is powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a **Bluetooth®** enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

## 911 Assist (If Equipped)

---

- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is off and the phone connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

### EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number. The following are limitations of this feature:

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Make sure a valid remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and rear of vehicle.

The system may not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows, moonroof or other controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

**Note:** *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

### One-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

### Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

### Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

### Panic Alarm



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 61).

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Liftgate



Press the button twice to open the liftgate.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery, CR2450, or equivalent.

## SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the vehicle on to turn it off.

**Note:** The panic alarm only operates when the vehicle is off.

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

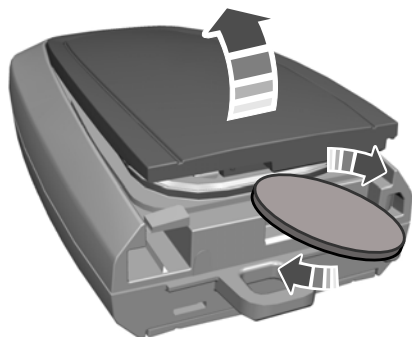
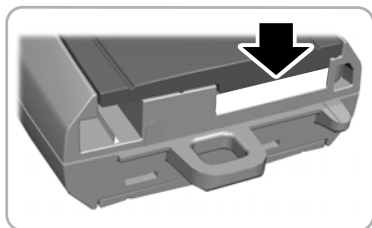


**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

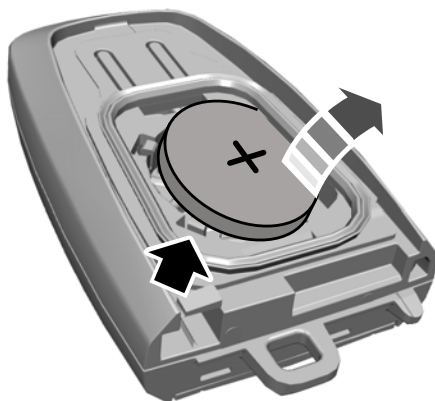


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

## Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Insert a new battery with the + facing up.
5. Reinstall the battery cover onto the remote control and install the key blade.



**Note:** Refer to local regulations before you dispose of the remote control batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the remote control battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control operates as normal.

**Note:** A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Replace remote control battery.

# Phone as a Key

## WHAT IS PHONE AS A KEY

Phone as a Key allows you to use your phone in place of a passive key.

You can use your phone for the following functions:

- Remote locking and unlocking.
- Passive entry and exit.
- Passive start and drive the vehicle.
- Remote start.
- Memory function recall.

## PHONE AS A KEY LIMITATIONS

Limitations can vary based on the make and model of your phone, phone location and physical obstructions.

The following items could impact Phone as a Key performance or prevent functionality in some cases:

- The typical operating range for Phone as a Key is 40 m (131 ft).
- Your **Bluetooth®** connection is not enabled, is disrupted, or out of range.
- Phone as a Key is not active or enabled on at least one phone.
- Your vehicle battery has depleted.
- Your phone battery has depleted.
- Interference from other devices using radio frequencies or physical obstructions.
- Your phone is too close to metal objects or other electronic devices.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and phone and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

## PROGRAMMING YOUR PHONE

To program your device as Phone as a Key:

1. Visit your device's app store to download the Ford mobile app.
2. Create a new account or sign in to an existing account on the Ford mobile app.
3. Add the vehicle identification number to your account and follow the prompts in the Ford mobile app to complete the authorization process.
4. After the authorization is complete, you can set up Phone as a Key following the prompts in the Ford mobile app.
5. After Phone as a Key is set up, you can set up the backup start passcode by following the prompts on your touchscreen.

**Note:** Keep your new backup start passcode with you in case of an emergency.

## Resetting Phone as a Key

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Reset.
3. Press the app connect reset option.
4. Press Reset All.
5. Confirm you would like to continue with erasing all Phone as a Key settings, keys and backup start passcodes.
6. Press Continue.
7. Confirm you are aware you are erasing all authorized users and Ford mobile app connect settings.
8. Press Continue.



# Phone as a Key

## USING THE VALET MODE

### Classic Valet Mode

#### Enabling Valet Mode

Make sure the remote control is in your vehicle.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Enter a four digit code to lock the touchscreen.
3. Re-enter the same four digit code to complete enabling valet mode.

#### Disabling Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.
2. Enter your four digit code to disable valet mode and unlock your touchscreen.

### Enhanced Valet Mode

#### Enabling Valet Mode

Have your backup start passcode completely set up before using valet mode. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 64).

**Note:** If your vehicle detects a remote control, the system defaults to classic valet mode.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display** (page 379).

**Note:** If the system detects a valid phone as a key, a valet passcode displays on both the touchscreen and mobile app.

**Note:** If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode on the touchscreen. Once validated, a valet passcode displays on the touchscreen.

2. Provide the valet the first five digits of the valet passcode to enter on the keyless entry keypad to unlock your vehicle.
3. Provide the valet the eight-digit valet passcode to enter on the touchscreen to start and drive your vehicle.

#### Disabling Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.

**Note:** If the system detects a valid phone as a key, valet mode disables.

**Note:** If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode. Once validated, valet mode disables.

## USING THE BACKUP START PASSCODE

Make sure you have phone as a key active on at least one phone to use a previously created backup start passcode. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 64).

1. Press the brake pedal and the push button start. If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key or remote control, a message appears on the touchscreen and prompts you for your backup start passcode.

**Note:** The touchscreen times out after 30 seconds with no interaction.

**Note:** If the backup start passcode screen does not appear, press the brake pedal and push button start again.

2. Use the touchscreen to enter your backup start passcode.
3. After entering your passcode, press return within 30 seconds.
4. Once the system validates the backup start passcode, a message alerts you to start your vehicle.

# Phone as a Key

5. Press the brake pedal and the push button start within 20 seconds to start the vehicle.
6. If your vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1-5.

## System Lockout

The system locks after five combined incorrect attempts of the following:

- Entering a backup start passcode.
- Resetting a current passcode.
- Entering a valet mode passcode.

**Note:** *The system remains locked for five minutes. After five minutes the system allows codes to be entered again.*

## PHONE AS A KEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PHONE AS A KEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### How can I tell if my vehicle has Phone as a Key?

- The vehicle's touchscreen shows the Phone as a Key reset option.
- Additional control buttons appear on the home screen of the Ford mobile app if you have already set up Phone as a Key on your vehicle through the Ford mobile app.

#### What happens if I cannot unlock the vehicle with Phone as a Key?

- Attempt to move your phone closer to the vehicle.
- Check that the Ford mobile app is still running and that the Phone as a Key control screen shows **Bluetooth®** is connected. If the phone is connected, attempt to press the remote unlock button in the Ford mobile app. If the phone is not connected or the remote unlock button does not work in the Ford mobile app, attempt to force close and restart the app.

#### Why do I get a No Key Detected message in the instrument cluster display when I am using Phone as a Key and my phone is in the car?

- Your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection has been disrupted or is not connected. Try reconnecting your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection.
- Move the phone closer to the center of the vehicle near the cup holder or center console.
- Verify Phone as a Key is still active, enabled and has not been revoked.

#### What do I do if my phone is lost, damaged or the battery has depleted?

- Use the backup start passcode that you created. See **Using the Backup Start Passcode** (page 65).

#### How many phones can I use for Phone as a Key?

- You can program and activate up to four phones with Phone as a Key to control your vehicle.

# Phone as a Key

---

## How does a valet drive my car if I only use Phone as a Key?

- Have the valet use the temporary valet passcode that you created. See **Using the Valet Mode** (page 65).

## I uninstalled my Ford mobile app and reinstalled it. Why am I not able to set up Phone as a Key again?

- Using the key list in the Ford mobile app remove the key that was previously associated with your phone.
- Reset Phone as a Key from your vehicle, and then set up Phone as a Key again. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 64).

## Why can I not remotely start the vehicle with Phone as a Key?

- Using the Ford mobile app, verify your Phone as a Key setup is complete and **Bluetooth®** is connected on at least one phone. If Phone as a Key setup is not complete, complete the setup as prompted from the Ford mobile app. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 64).

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

#### One-Stage Unlocking



Press the button to unlock all doors.

#### Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)



Press the button to unlock the driver's door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors.

#### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms your vehicle is locked.

A tone sounds when you press the lock button twice within three seconds on the remote control to confirm your vehicle is locked.

**Note:** For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 72).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

**Note:** For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 72).

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

**Note:** The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

## OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

### AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

# Doors and Locks

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

**Note:** Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

## SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF (If Equipped)

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autounlock on or off.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

### AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The vehicle is on.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

## SWITCHING AUTOLOCK ON AND OFF (If Equipped)

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autolock on or off.

## MISLOCK

### WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

### MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the turn signals do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

## SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Mislock on or off.

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

#### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door is open.

# Doors and Locks

## DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	
Hood Ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

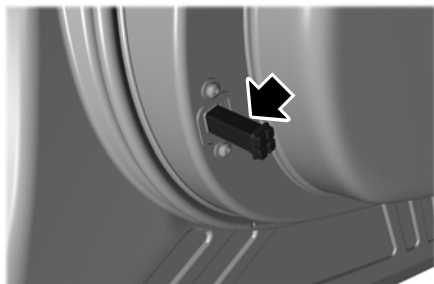
# Doors and Locks

---

## DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### How to unlock my vehicle if the 12 volt battery is dead?

You must apply 12 volt power to the 12 volt system. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 295).



### How to close my door if the actuator is extended?

Apply pressure by pushing the outside of the door until the door closes.

# Keyless Entry

## WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) of the front door handles and liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function (If Equipped)

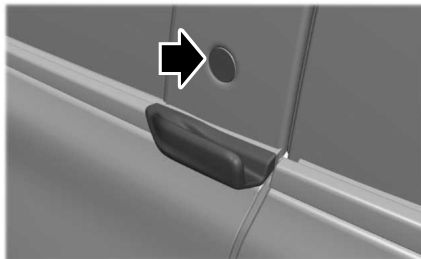
You can enable the two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors



With your remote control or authorized phone within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, press the touchpad on the door window trim to unlock and open the door.

### Opening the Liftgate with Passive Key

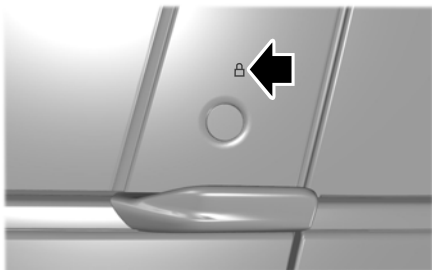


Press the exterior liftgate release button inside the liftgate handle. The liftgate unlocks and opens. See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 84).



# Keyless Entry

## Locking the Doors



With your remote control or authorized phone within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the lock icon on the driver door window trim to lock the door. The keyless entry system requires a brief delay to authenticate your device.

**Note:** The door activation switch flashes one time to indicate the vehicle locks.

**Note:** Do not use the outside door handle as a roof cargo strap.

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 72). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

#### Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

#### Why does the passive key not work?

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

# Keyless Entry Keypad

## WHAT IS THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keyless entry keypad allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle using the keypad on the window trim.

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD LIMITATIONS

The system may not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.

## LOCATING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is near the driver window and illuminates when you press it.



## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD MASTER ACCESS CODE

### What Is the Master Access Code

The master access code is a factory-set five-digit entry code. You can operate the keypad with the master access code at any time. The master access code can be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Displaying the Master Access Code in the Instrument Cluster Display

Read and understand the following before you begin the process.

- You must have two keys inside your vehicle.
- Make sure that you close all the doors and that they remain closed throughout the procedure.
- Do not place the device on the wireless accessory charging area during the procedure.

**Note:** Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. If you perform any of the steps out of sequence, stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again.

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Place the first key into the backup slot. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 148).
3. Turn on the vehicle, without pressing the brake pedal, and wait for a few seconds.
4. Turn off the vehicle and replace the first key with the second key.
5. Turn on the vehicle, without pressing the brake pedal.

The master access code appears in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds.

**Note:** The code may not display until after other warning messages display.

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD PERSONAL ACCESS CODES

### Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.

# Keyless Entry Keypad

3. Enter your personal five-digit code.  
You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1 through 3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3-4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5-6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7-8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9-0** to save personal code 5.

If your vehicle comes with the operating system, you can also program the system with one personal entry code.

**Note:** *Programming a code using the operating system overwrites any code that was already saved on the position 9-0 of the Keypad.*

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The five-digit master code works even if you have set your own personal code.

## Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds.  
You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the five-digit master code works.

## Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlock your vehicle using keyless entry.

## USING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

### Unlocking the Driver Door



Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.

**Note:** *All doors unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 72).*

### Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code, then press 3-4 within five seconds.

# Keyless Entry Keypad

---

## To Release the Frunk

Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code, then press 7-8 within five seconds.

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD VIDEOS

[SecuriCode Keyless Entry Keypad Video Link](#)

## Locking the Doors



Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time with the driver door closed.

**Note:** *You do not need to enter the code first.*

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the keypad not accept the access code?

If you enter the access code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Slowly re-enter the access code.

#### Why does the keypad not function?

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter a wrong code seven times. The anti-scan mode disables the keypad for one minute and the red light flashes.

# Walk Away Lock

---

## WHAT IS WALK AWAY LOCK

Walk away lock is a locking feature that locks the vehicle when you walk away from it with the passive key or authorized phone, or you stay near the vehicle for about two and a half minutes.

## HOW DOES WALK AWAY LOCK WORK

Walk away lock locks all the doors when all of the following are met:

- The vehicle is off.
- All doors, hood and luggage compartments have been closed and unlocked.
- Any passive key or authorized phone is not inside the vehicle.
- All passive keys or authorized phones leave the approach detection zone of the vehicle or more than two and a half minutes has elapsed after closing the door.

## WALK AWAY LOCK LIMITATIONS

Walk away lock does not lock all the doors when any of following occur:

- The vehicle is on.
- All doors are closed and locked.
- Any of the doors, hood or luggage compartments are open.
- Any passive key or authorized phone is inside the vehicle.

## SWITCHING WALK AWAY LOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Walk Away Lock on or off.

## SWITCHING WALK AWAY LOCK AUDIBLE FEEDBACK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Locks.
3. Press Walk Away Lock.
4. Switch Audible Feedback on or off.

## Easy Entry and Exit (If Equipped)

---

### HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver seat rearward up to 5 cm (2 in) when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat returns to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

### SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.  
See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Easy Entry/Exit.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate settings on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2.



Press the liftgate icon.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

**Note:** If an authorized device is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

**Note:** You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate settings on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2.



Press the liftgate icon.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. The liftgate could come into contact with objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

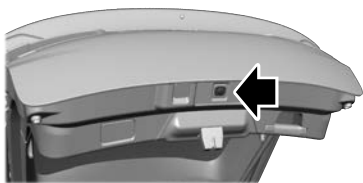
### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

### STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

### LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

#### Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

**Note:** *To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.*

## Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

## LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate Ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

---

## LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

# Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate and then lift to open.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle

## Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

---

that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

**Note:** *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

### WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

### ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Arm the alarm by locking your vehicle.

### DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors with the remote control or keyless entry feature.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

# Security

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No Key Detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm	

# Security

---

## **SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



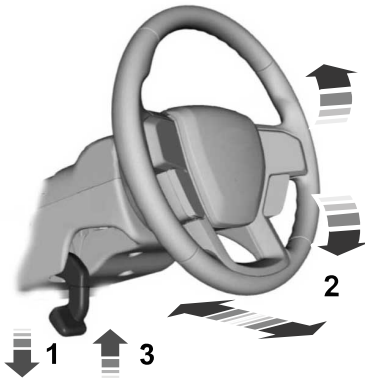
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 122).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position you prefer.
3. Lock the steering column.

## LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

**Note:** The steering wheel lock does not lock when the power is on or when your vehicle is moving.

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the power on to unlock it.

**Note:** You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.



**WARNING:** Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

## HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.

# Steering Wheel

---



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen. An indicator illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

**Note:** *The vehicle must be switched on to use the heated steering wheel.*

**Note:** *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

**Note:** *The heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle, depending on the remote start settings. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the vehicle was switched off.*

**Note:** *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

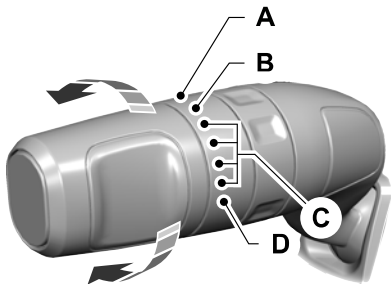
### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

### SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.
- C Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
- D Off.



Use the rotary control to operate the windshield wipers.

## AUTOWIPERS

### WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

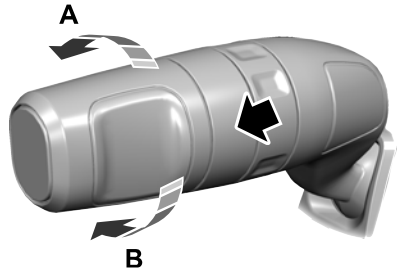
Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

### AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rain sensing on or off.

**Note:** When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A High sensitivity.
- B Low sensitivity.

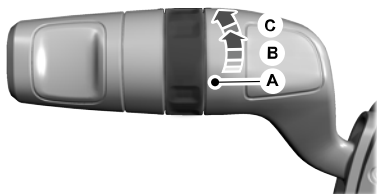
Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

# Wipers and Washers

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

## SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.



Use the rotary control to operate the rear window wiper.

## REVERSE WIPE

### WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

### REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Wipers.

3. Switch Rear wiper on or off.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

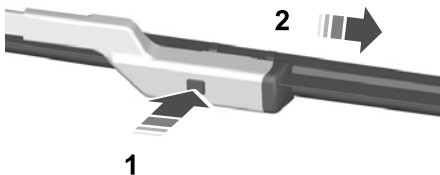


Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

## REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

**Note:** Do not manually move the wiper arms to service position, doing so may damage the wiper motor. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

# Wipers and Washers

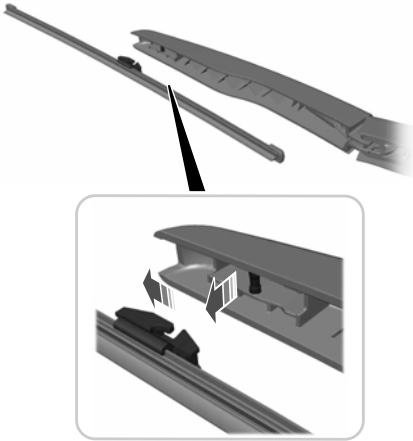
2. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C (41°F), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

### USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 94).

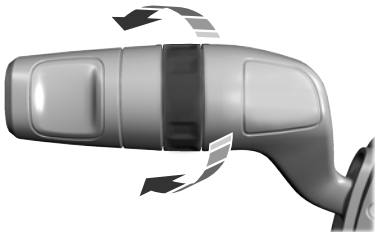
# Wipers and Washers

## SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

- 1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
- 2. Press Wipers.
- 3. Switch Courtesy Wipe on or off.

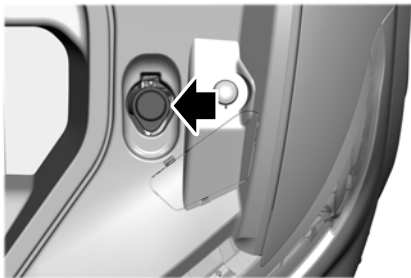
**Note:** When you switch the feature on, the wipers make an additional single wipe at the end of the washer request. When you switch it off, the wipers finish the current washer request.

## USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position to operate the rear window washer.

## ADDING WASHER FLUID



## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

# Wipers and Washers

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid -35 °C / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité - 35 °C Motorcraft®(Canada) ZC-32-B2(U.S.) CXC-37-M(Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

## WIPERS AND WASHERS VIDEOS

[Improving Your Windshield Wiper Performance Video Link](#)

[Courtesy Wipe Video Link](#)

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

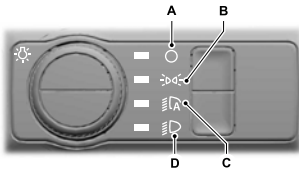
### WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 92). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 92).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



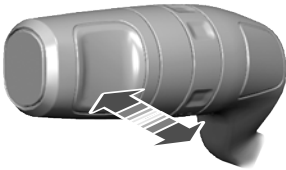
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

**Note:** Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

### SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

### Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.



# Exterior Lighting

## HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

#### How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

#### How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

#### How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

#### What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

#### Autolamp Exit Delay

You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

- From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
- Press Lighting.
- Press Autolamp Delay.
- Select a setting.

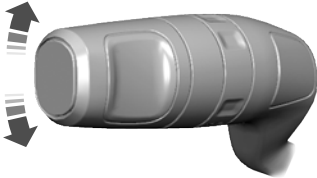
**Note:** If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.

**Note:** You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: CONFIGURABLE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Daytime Running Lights on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch the vehicle on.
- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.

**Note:** Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

# Exterior Lighting

## SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (DRL)



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

## USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

**Note:** When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

**Note:** The front fog lamps lights switch off automatically when high beams are activated.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## SWITCHING WELCOME LIGHTING ON AND OFF

The system turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device, unlock your vehicle or interact with any of the doors. If you open or close any door, the lamps stay on for a short period of time to provide courtesy lighting.

**Note:** Welcome lighting still displays when you use your remote control to unlock your vehicle or interact with any of the doors.

To switch the system on or off:

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Welcome Lighting on or off.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle's configuration, you may not have the option to switch the feature on and off.

To conserve power, the system may not work when you are approaching your vehicle if:

- The 12-volt battery is low.
- The system was triggered 10 times prior to starting the vehicle.
- The vehicle is left unused for a few days.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

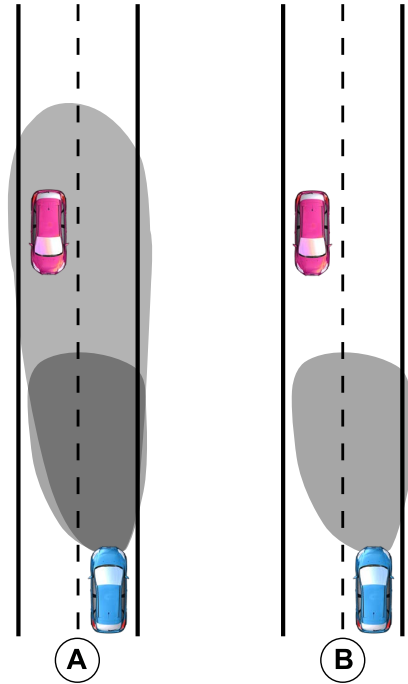
# Exterior Lighting

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

# Exterior Lighting



**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.

- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

**Note:** The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

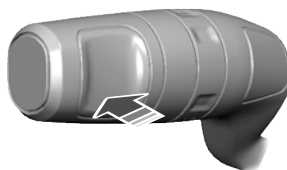
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Auto High Beam on or off.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

## Exterior Lighting

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### EXTERIOR LIGHTING VIDEOS

[Experiencing Mustang Mach-E Welcome Lighting Video Link](#)

# Interior Lighting

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.



Press to switch all interior lamps on or off.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.

**Note:** The position of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.

### Individual Map Lamps



Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.



Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

**Note:** If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.

**Note:** The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.

# Interior Lighting

## ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



**Note:** *There are six levels of brightness adjustments available during the day and twelve levels of brightness adjustments available at night.*

## AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Scroll down to the Ambient Lighting menu.
3. Press to switch ambient lighting on or off.

### ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Scroll down to the Ambient Lighting menu.
3. Drag the slider to the desired brightness.

## INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?**

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.



# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

**Note:** The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

### WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

# Windows

## USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

**Note:** *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

## SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Global Open on or off.

## USING GLOBAL CLOSING



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

**Note:** *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 106).*

## SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Global Close on or off.

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

### OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

**Note:** *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



**WARNING:** When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.

When the rear window lock/child safety lock switch is engaged, the window switches mounted on the rear door panels are deactivated.



The control is on the driver door. It enables both the rear window locks and the child safety locks.

Press the control to switch the rear window locks and child safety locks on. Press the control again to switch them off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch them on.

The rear window lock and child lock settings remain active when you switch off your vehicle.

# Interior Mirror

---

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

### AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

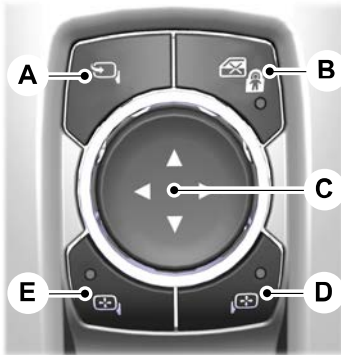
**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

# Exterior Mirrors

## ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Power fold.
- B Window and child safety lock.
- C Adjustment control.
- D Right-hand mirror.
- E Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the push button start in accessory mode or your vehicle running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

## FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

**Note:** This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors autofold on.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

**Note:** Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with autofold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

**Note:** The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

## Switching Autofold On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Mirrors.
3. Switch Autofold on or off.

## Loose, Noisy or Intermittently Working Mirrors

If you manually fold the power folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. Reset the mirrors if:

- They vibrate when you drive.
- They feel loose.

# Exterior Mirrors

- They do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.
- The mirrors are intermittently working.

To reset the power fold feature, use the power folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Operate the power folding mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

If the above process does not help you to fix the mirror, perform the following steps.

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

## Directional Indicator Mirrors

When your vehicle is running, the forward facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

## Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Locating the Memory Function Buttons** (page 135).

## Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are unfolded and turn off when the mirrors fold.

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 118).

## 360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 209).

## Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 251).

## AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR

The driver exterior mirror dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

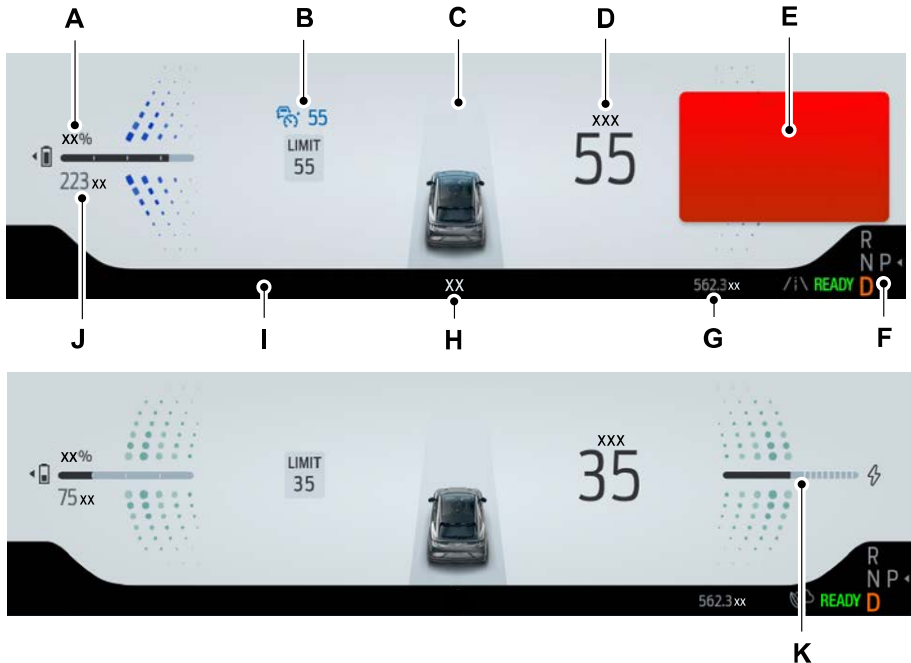
# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW

**Note:** The instrument cluster display can be customized to display information in several different layouts. Maximum zone complexity shown.

**Note:** The instrument cluster display changes based on feature settings selected in the center display screen or set with steering wheel controls.

**Note:** The pop-up message display area fully occupies the power gauge area when a pop-up warning is active.



- A High voltage battery gauge.
- B Driver assist message display area.
- C Driver assist area.
- D Speedometer.
- E Pop-up message display area.
- F Gear indicator.

# Instrument Cluster

---

- G Odometer.
- H Compass or outside air temperature.
- I Information bar.
- J Range display area.
- K Power gauge.

## POWER GAUGE

The power gauge displays the amount of power going to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When the system limits the available maximum power, the right side of the gauge shows gray lines representing the proportional reduction in available power. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the amount of power the regenerative system captures and returns to the high voltage battery.

## SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel on the battery's current state of charge. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving and the energy available in the high voltage battery.

The amount of energy your vehicle uses when driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.

- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on flat or hilly roads.
- Towing.

The available energy capacity in the high voltage battery is affected by cold temperatures and battery degradation. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 150).

If you power on your vehicle while pressing the brake pedal and your navigation system has an active route, the distance to your destination or next charging station displays.

**Note:** *It is normal for the vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage and battery temperature. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 288).*

**Note:** *When you leave your vehicle unplugged, it periodically uses energy from the high voltage battery to recharge the 12-volt accessory battery, resulting in a reduced driving range.*

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a gauge or a percentage. A full fill or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you get from plugging in your vehicle.



The gauge is normally black. When a low battery condition is reached the gauge is amber. When the battery is depleted the gauge is red.

If you power on your vehicle without pressing the brake pedal, or if your vehicle is plugged in, the full battery gauge displays.

## **Charging Status**

Additional charge information is displayed when your vehicle is plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings on the touchscreen. See **Charging Settings** (page 170).

## **Charge Required to Reach Destination**

When the full battery gauge is displayed and your navigation system has an active route, a symbol is added that represents the high voltage battery charge level needed to reach your destination or next charging station. In this state, if your vehicle is also plugged in and your current battery charge level is less than the level required to reach your destination or next charging station, the time when your vehicle reaches the level of charge required to arrive at your next stop is displayed.

# Instrument Cluster Display

---

## BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery.

**Note:** *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu on your touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.  
See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Switch Brake Coach on or off.

# Trip Computer

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. From the app launcher, press Trips.  
See **Center Display** (page 379).

## RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. From the app launcher, press Trips.  
See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Trip 1 or Trip 2.
3. Press Reset.

**Note:** *The current trip resets every time you start your vehicle.*

## TRIP DATA

Trip data includes distance, time and energy economy. Better energy economy, meaning greater efficiency or lower consumption, results in increased driving range.

## Where Did My Energy Go

Displays a breakdown of energy consumption for your trip.

- Climate Use – This includes energy used by your vehicle's high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater.
- Driving and Route – This includes energy used to propel your vehicle based on your driving style and route. Your driving style includes how fast you drive and whether your acceleration and braking is mild or aggressive. Your route includes factors such as the amount of city or highway driving and road grades.

- Accessories – This includes energy used for low voltage accessories such as climate system fans, heated seats and lighting.
- Exterior Temperature – This includes energy losses due to outside temperature and other conditions which reduce vehicle system efficiency.

## How Is My Driving

Displays scores for trip driving behavior. Higher scores result in better energy economy.

- Acceleration – Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking – Slow and steady braking improves your score.
- Speed – Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores. Your score rapidly drops above 112 km/h (70 mph).



You can view additional trip data by pressing the icon on your touchscreen.

# Remote Start

## USING REMOTE START



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

Follow the instructions in the vehicle app to start and stop your vehicle.

**Note:** *The vehicle app must be paired with your vehicle to remotely start using the app.*

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle app, you may need to be within a certain range for the vehicle to successfully remote start.*

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** *You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.

- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

**Note:** *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.*

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Remote Start Setup.

You can adjust the following in the remote start settings menu:

- Enable or disable remote start.
- Climate control settings.
- Heated seat settings.
- Heated steering wheel settings.
- Remote start duration.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Use the controls in this area to change the climate inside of your vehicle.

Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

**Note:** To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

## SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** The maximum defrost button is also on the lighting control.

**Note:** To prevent the window from fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

**Note:** The heated rear window and windshield (if equipped) turn on when you select maximum defrost.

### SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

### SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF

When E-Heat is on, an electric heater warms the cabin and keeps the windows from fogging. Turning E-Heat off saves battery power, which extends your driving range. The electric heater is the only source of heat to warm the cabin.



Press the button to access climate control.



Press the button to turn the electric heater on and off.

**Note:** The default setting is on.

**Note:** Disabling the system maximizes your driving range.

**Note:** The system does not work in some climate control modes.

**Note:** This button does not switch off the climate control system.

**Note:** In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system activates or runs with reduced performance when switched on.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window; this could damage the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 118).

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

### SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)



You can press + or - to set the temperature.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

### SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

**Note:** When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

**Note:** Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

## CLIMATE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



Illuminates when the outside air temperature is between 4°C (39.2°F) and 0°C (32.0°F).

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM REFRIGERANT



Replace safety system components. Do not repair, reuse or try to salvage.



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Your vehicle has an under hood label that identifies the refrigerant used by the air conditioning system.

**Note:** Only allow a trained and certified technician service the refrigerant system to ensure proper and safe operation, per the society of automotive engineers J2845.

**Note:** Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator with one from a salvage vehicle. Only replace it with a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

The meaning of each symbol on the under hood label are as follows:



Caution



Air conditioning system.



System lubricant type.



See vehicle service manual for service information.



Requires registered technician to service.



Flammable refrigerant.



# Interior Air Quality

## WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

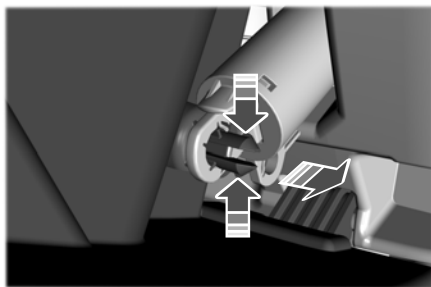
## REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 403).

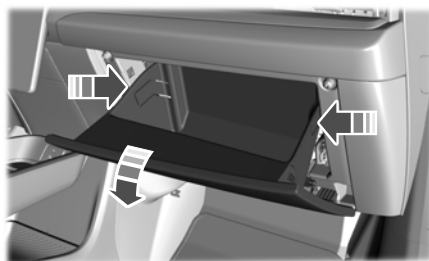
The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

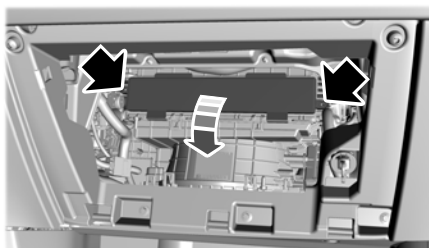
1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Detach the damper by depressing the tabs and pulling it away from the glove compartment.



3. Press the tabs on each side to release the glove compartment.



4. Fully lower the glove compartment.
5. Unclip both sides of the filter door and swing door down to access filter.



6. Remove the old filter and replace with a new filter.

# Front Seats

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

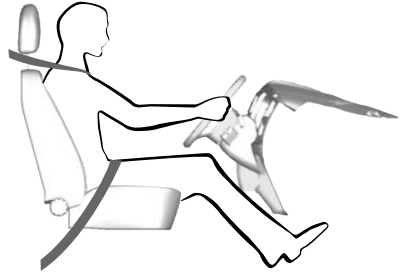


**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

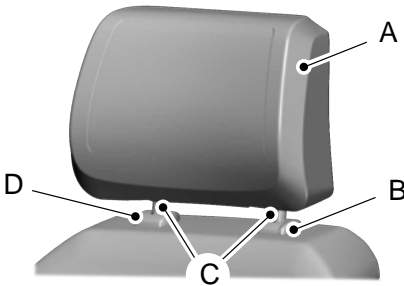
## Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

### MANUAL SEATS

#### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

## Front Seats

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



# Front Seats

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT (If Equipped)



The head restraints consist of:

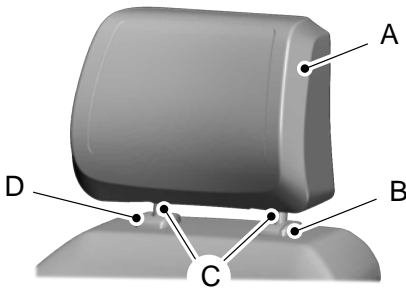
- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve.

## ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT FIXED HEAD RESTRAINTS



## POWER SEATS

### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam pad and plastic finish panels covering the upper structure of the seat backrest.

Properly adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

## Front Seats

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT ADJUSTABLE HEAD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

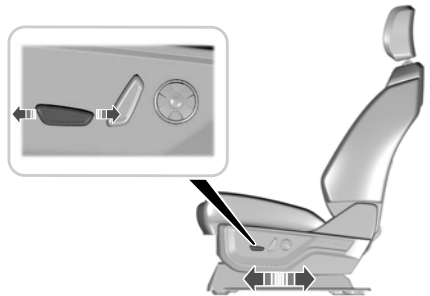
### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



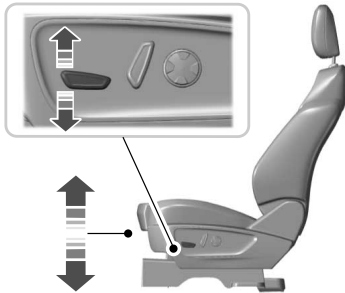
**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



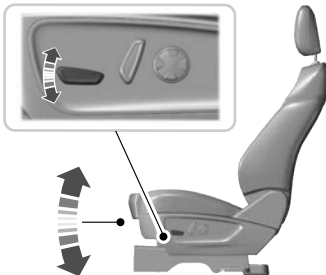
## Front Seats

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

(If Equipped)



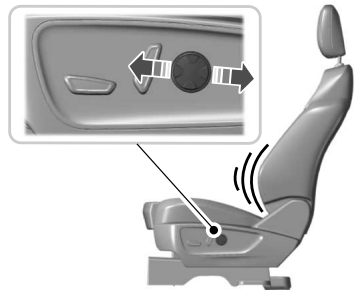
### Tilting the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



### ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



### HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

#### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

**⚠ WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## Front Seats



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.



Press the heated seat symbol, then select your preferred heat level or off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat. You can also press the heated seat symbol on the audio volume knob, then select your preferred heat level or off.

**Note:** Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

### Automatic Heated Seats

When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

### VENTILATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

#### VENTILATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

Do not:

- Spill liquid on the front seats. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Place cargo or objects under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.

### SWITCHING THE VENTILATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to switch on the ventilated seats. Then, select your preferred cool level or off. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.

**Note:** The ventilated seats switch on during a remote start if they are enabled.

**Note:** The ventilated seats may switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you previously switched your vehicle off.



## Front Seats

---

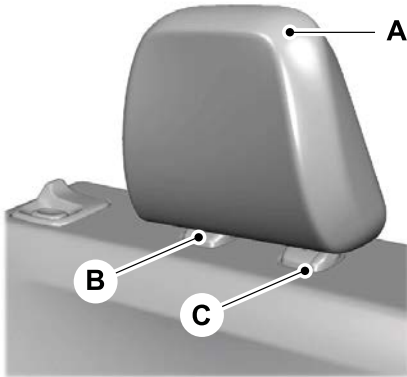
**Note:** *Select Auto to ventilate your seat based on your climate control settings, humidity and air temperature.*

# Rear Seats

## MANUAL SEATS

### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

#### Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

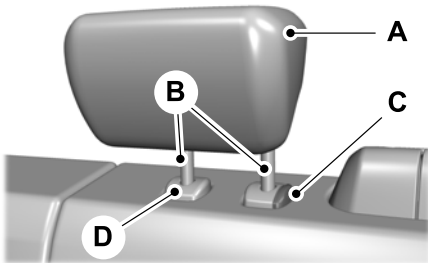
To lower the center head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

#### Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
3. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button - if equipped.
4. Pull up the head restraint.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## Rear Seats

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



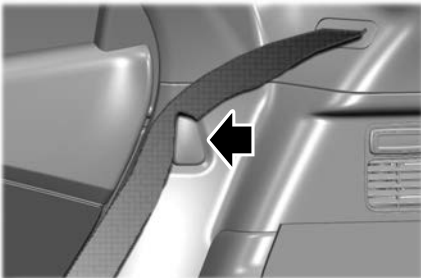
**WARNING:** To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.



**WARNING:** When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



Press the button and fold the seat backrest forward.



When the rear outermost seat backrests are folded, place the seatbelts in the stowage clip. This prevents the seatbelt from getting caught when the backrest is unfolded.

### UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest up to unfold it. Make sure the seat latch engages.

# Rear Occupant Alert System

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

**Note:** *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

# Rear Occupant Alert System

**Note:** It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

**Note:** The default setting is Alert Only.

**Note:** If you choose Alert only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

**Note:** Performing a system reset causes the system to switch on again.

## Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Switch Child Seat Installed on or off.

**Note:** The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a LATCH system child seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

## Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** The graphic may be different for your vehicle.

# Rear Occupant Alert System

---

## **REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS**

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

## Memory Function (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.

### MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

### LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

### SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the vehicle on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

### RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release a preset button.

**Note:** You can recall a preset memory position when the vehicle is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the vehicle is on and it is not moving.

**Note:** Pressing any of the preset buttons during a memory recall cancels the operation.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.

Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the vehicle is off moves the seat and steering column to the easy entry position.

### Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Passive Key

See **Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile** (page 392).

# Garage Door Opener

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER INTRODUCTION

### HomeLink Wireless Control System

The universal garage door opener replaces the common handheld garage door opener with a three-button transmitter integrated into the driver-side sun visor.



### How Does The Garage Door Opener Work

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. You can program garage doors as well as entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

### Garage Door Opener Limitations

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out, or quit, after several seconds – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal. U.S. gate operators time-out in the same manner.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER PRECAUTIONS AND FREQUENCIES

### Garage Door Opener Precautions



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

### FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



# Garage Door Opener

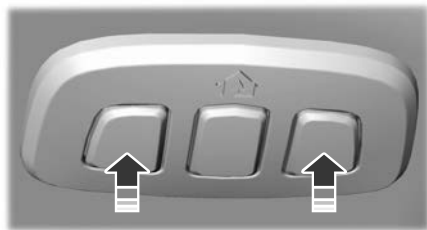
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must be at least 20 cm (8 in) from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## PROGRAMMING THE GARAGE DOOR OPENER

To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in your vehicle, use the **clear** function. To override one button, use the **reprogram** function.

**Note:** *Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.*

### Clearing the Garage Door Opener



To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in the vehicle:

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the indicator above the buttons flashes rapidly.
2. When the indicator flashes, release the buttons.

**Note:** *This clears all stored codes. You cannot erase individual buttons.*

**Note:** *You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after they have been initially programmed, you must either clear all codes, or reprogram each individual button.*

**Note:** *We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons.*

### Reprogramming the Garage Door Opener

If a button on your garage door opener has already been programmed, you can override it. To program a device to a previously trained button:

1. Press and hold the desired button for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the button, proceed to Step 3 of **Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter**.

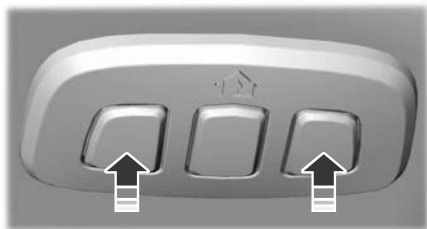
### Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter

**Note:** *The programming steps below assume you are programming a HomeLink that was not previously programmed. If your HomeLink was previously programmed, you may need to **clear** or **reprogram** your HomeLink buttons.*

**Note:** *Put a new battery in the handheld transmitter. This allows for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.*

**Note:** *Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.*

# Garage Door Opener



To program your in-vehicle HomeLink function button with your handheld transmitter:

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, switch your vehicle on, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Press and release one of the three HomeLink function buttons that you would like to program.

**Note:** The indicator should begin to flash. If the indicator does not flash, press and hold the function button for 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.

3. Hold your handheld garage door transmitter 2–8 cm (1–3 in) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
4. Press and hold the handheld transmitter button you want to program while watching the indicator on HomeLink. Continue to hold the handheld button until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.

**Note:** You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door.

**Note:** If the indicator stays on, the programming is complete.

**Note:** If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, repeat Step 5.

**Note:** If your device still does not operate, you must program your garage door.

6. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

**Note:** Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

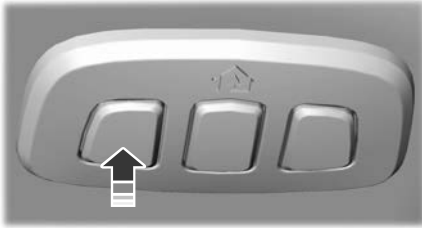
## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Garage Door Opener Motor

**Note:** Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.



1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.

# Garage Door Opener



3. Press and hold one of the three HomeLink function buttons you want to program for two seconds, then release.
4. Repeat Step 3. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Gate Opener Motor

### Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner.

**Note:** *If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised that you unplug the device during the **cycling** process to prevent possible overheating.*

1. Press and release your handheld transmitter, **every two seconds**, until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.
2. Release the handheld transmitter button.

3. Press and hold the HomeLink function button you want to program for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door.

**Note:** *If the indicator stays on, the programming is complete.*

**Note:** *If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, repeat Step 3.*

4. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER ADDITIONAL ASSISTANCE

### Video Setup Instructions

[Universal Garage Door Opener: HomeLink](#)

[Universal Garage Door Opener: HomeLink for Genie Intellicode 2](#)

[Universal Garage Door Opener HomeLink for Genie Intellicode](#)

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### USB A



### USB C



### Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports are in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** These USB ports can also charge devices.

**Note:** Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

**Note:** We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

### Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports are in the following locations:

- Inside the media bin below the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to the USB port.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 379).



Press the USB option.

## USB Ports

**Note:** If USB device was not the previous source.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.



### CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

#### Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

#### Charge Only USB Ports

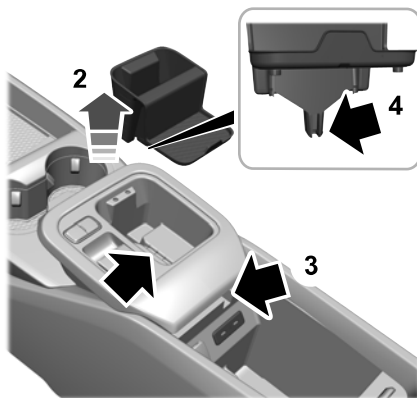


You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

#### Connecting a device to USB ports inside the center console

You can connect your device to the USB ports inside the center console using the following steps.

1. Locate the charge only USB ports and the power cord inside the center console.

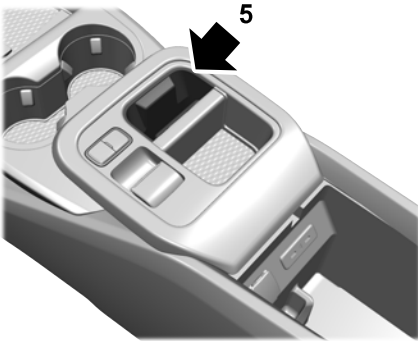


2. Remove the center console storage mat.

## USB Ports

---

3. Connect the power cord into the port and route the power cord through the opening and push into the storage area.
4. Insert the power cord through the opening in the center console storage mat.



5. Replace the mat and pull the extra cord from the console. Connect the device and place it in the slot.

# Power Outlet

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the power outlets to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.

To prevent damage to the vehicle's battery:

- Do not use the power outlets over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow.
- Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
- Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power outlets caps closed when not in use.
- Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power outlets.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- In the media bin below the instrument panel.
- Inside the main center console bin.
- On the rear of the main center console bin.
- In the cargo area.

# Wireless Accessory Charger

## WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



**WARNING:** Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

**Note:** During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

## LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is in the front console below the instrument panel.

## CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



## Wireless Accessory Charger

---



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

**Note:** *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

**Note:** *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

# Storage

## CUP HOLDERS

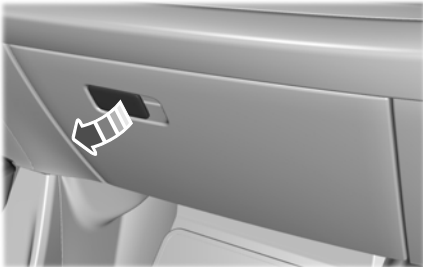
### CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

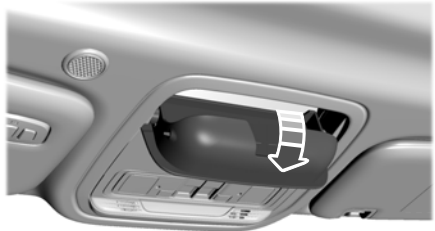
### OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch to the left to open the glove compartment.

## GLASSES HOLDER

### LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



The glasses holder is in the overhead console.

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

# Starting and Powering Off

## STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

## STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

You can also start your vehicle using Valet Mode or a Backup Start Passcode. See **Phone as a Key** (page 64).

## POWERING OFF



**WARNING:** Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and press the push button start to restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

## RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

### Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

# Starting and Powering Off

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open the driver's door for 2 seconds or longer while your vehicle is on and the selector is in park (P), you cannot shift out of park (P) if the system does not detect a valid remote control device.

## VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

### WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been powered on and stationary for an extended period of time.

### HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the instrument cluster display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the instrument cluster display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery energy.

Start your vehicle as normal.

### SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2. Switch Vehicle Power Down Timer on or off.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the vehicle on.

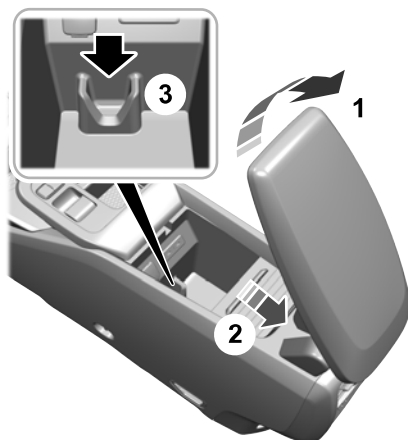
## OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



# Starting and Powering Off

---

3. Place the passive key into the backup slot.
4. With the passive key in this position, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

## STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 148).

#### Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

# High Voltage Battery

## WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

## PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

**Note:** If you are unsure of the battery type used in your vehicle locate the vehicle identification label located on the dash board or driver door. If the 8th vin digit is a 4 or 5 you have a Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) battery, and if there is any other digit or letter you have the Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) style battery.

## Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app. Charge Scheduling improves the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit.

## Extended Range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) Batteries

Set your preferred charging times to be at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to 90% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

## Standard Range Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Batteries

Set the maximum charge level to 100% and charge to 100% at least once per month to maintain range accuracy.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort feature. This will not only warm or cool the cabin but also condition the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

# High Voltage Battery

## DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. This is more pronounced on the standard range battery pack versus the extended range battery pack. See **DC Charging** (page 167).

## Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C (32°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

At temperatures just above the freezing point or lower, you should plug your vehicle in to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

## Storage State of Charge

When storing your vehicle for an extended period of more than 30 days follow the instructions below depending on your vehicle's battery type.

### Extended Range Nickel Cobalt Manganese (NCM) Batteries

During regular use, you can increase the battery life by maintaining the state of charge below 100%. The battery state of charge should be at approximately 50%. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

**Note:** *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 170).*

### Standard Range Lithium Iron Phosphate (LFP) Batteries

During regular use, you can increase the battery life by maintaining the state of charge at 100%. When storing for an extended time that the battery state of charge be at approximately 50%. See **Charging Settings** (page 170).

## RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

### High Voltage Battery



Illuminates blue under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, the battery is low on charge. If it illuminates red, the battery is depleted.

### Limited Performance



Illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

# High Voltage Battery

---

## Stop Safely



Illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode.



# Charging Your Vehicle

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



**WARNING:** Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



**WARNING:** Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the charging equipment, fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of fire, connect only to a circuit provided with 40 amps maximum branch circuit overcurrent protection installed in accordance with NEC and local electrical code.

# Charging Your Vehicle

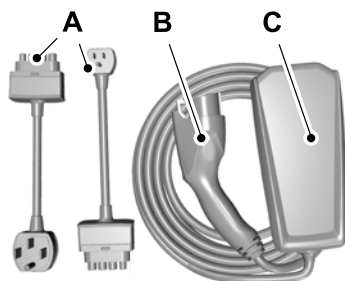


**WARNING:** High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW (IF EQUIPPED)

The mobile power cord has a low power connector to use with a 120V plug NEMA 5-15 and a high power connector to use with a 240V plug NEMA 14-50.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	SAE
Voltage	120-240 VAC
Maximum Current	32 amps max continuous
Frequency	60Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	Approximately 6.1 m (20 ft)
Weight	3.9 kg (8.6 lb)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control box.

The mobile power cord is in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor and allows you to charge the vehicle's battery using a standard household outlet.

Plug the connector into the control box first. Next plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug the coupler into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

**Note:** To insert the connector, firmly hold the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improperly inserting the connector results in an amber fault light or intermittent charging, and a longer charge session.

**Note:** Follow the installation instructions provided with the mobile power cord.

**Note:** We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

**Note:** The mobile power cord does not charge and gives a fault indication, if ground is not present.

**Note:** Plug the connector for the mobile power cord directly into the wall outlet. Do not plug the mobile power cord into any form of extension cord.

**Note:** Use the wall bracket to support the charge control box. The charge control box cannot be hung from the wall outlet.

**Note:** Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

## Mobile Power Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps to make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the mobile power cord after charging.

When charging is complete, place the mobile power cord in the rear luggage compartment, under the load floor.

**Note:** Do not hold the mobile power cord by the power cable.

**Note:** To remove the connector, firmly hold the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

## CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage your mobile power cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the mobile power cord from direct sunlight.

## SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:


- Service Ground Check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger red indicator turns on and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal Event Sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases the charging current or shuts the unit down if required.
- Ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) Protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and illuminates the red indicator.
- Insulation: The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated. There are no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.


# Charging Your Vehicle


- Unintentional Disconnection: The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.


## DC Charger with NACS Connectors

The adapter plug is a NACS to CCS1 adapter that enables CCS1 vehicles within the North American Charging Standard (NACS) Alliance to access other DC chargers with NACS stations. Access to DC chargers with NACS stations increases the amount of charging locations and the ability to charge your vehicle. For further details on using the DC chargers with NACS adapter and access availability, contact your dealer.


 **WARNING:** Handle the adapter with care and ensure proper connection before use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock or serious injury.

 **WARNING:** When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Visually inspect the adapter before each use. Do not use the adapter if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the adapter. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

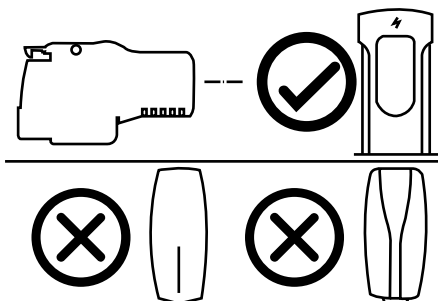
 **WARNING:** Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the coupler or adapter when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler or adapter. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charge adapter.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the adapter with chargers capable of DC current above the rated current, as it could exceed the adapter's rating. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

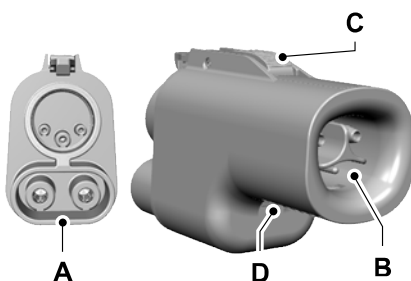
## Important Safety Instructions

Use the adapter with NACS DC chargers only. Do not use for AC charging. Not suitable for use with wall connectors, destination chargers, mobile connectors, or any other EV chargers. Misuse could result in vehicle damage and safety hazards that are not covered by your vehicles warranty.



# Charging Your Vehicle

Specification Type	Specification Value
Rated Current	500 Amps
Rated Input / Output	1000 Volts
Weatherproof Rating	IP67
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-40°C (-40°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Connector	CCS1
Inlet	DC chargers with NACS
Weight	0.96 kg (2 lb)



- A CCS1 connector.
- B NACS DC charger inlet.
- C CCS1 unlock button.
- D NACS unlock button.

Charging time varies depending on the DC chargers with NACS station, electric vehicle specifications, environmental and battery temperature.

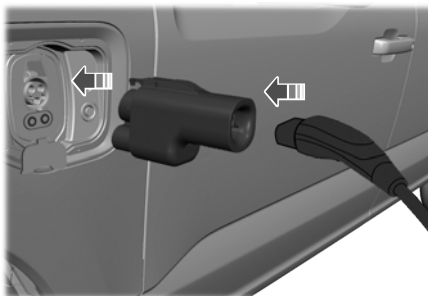
The adapter includes built-in temperature monitoring and decreases power or stops charging based on internal temperature limits.

## Connecting the Adapter to Your Vehicle

1. Open the charge port door.

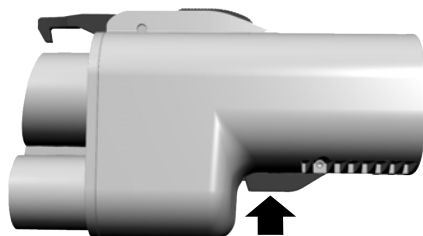
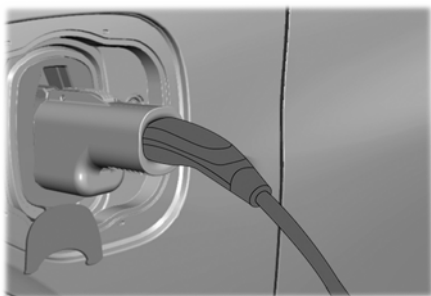


2. Press the NACS button on the adapter and insert the NACS DC charger handle into the NACS DC charger inlet on the adapter.



3. Plug the adapter and the NACS charge handle connected together into the charge port.

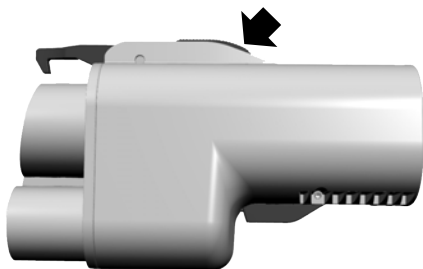
## Charging Your Vehicle



4. Begin charging following the DC chargers with NACS charge station guidelines.

### Disconnecting the Adapter from Your Vehicle

1. Only remove the adapter once charging has stopped or completed.



2. Press the CCS1 unlock button on the top of the adapter to remove the adapter from the charge port on your vehicle.

3. Press the NACS unlock button on the rear of the adapter to safely remove the DC charger from the NACS adapter.

### MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Handle the adapter with care and store in a safe location.

### CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners, detergents or solvents as this could damage the adapter.

### Troubleshooting

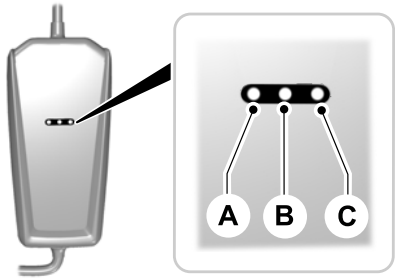
If the vehicle fails to initiate charging, perform the following:

- Make sure the DC chargers with NACS can be used with the CCS1 model.
- Check the connections at both the NACS and CCS1 ends of the adapter.
- Unplug and reinsert both the cable and adapter.
- Check the charging status on the DC charger and electric vehicle display.

**Note:** *If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

# Charging Your Vehicle

## CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS



- A Amber Fault Indicator Light.
- B Blue Status Indicator Light.
- C Red Trouble Indicator Light.

**Note:** When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators will blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle will happen twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

## Mobile Power Cord Indicator Lights

### Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact us.

### Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging.

No action required.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the mobile power cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact us.

## Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

Mobile power cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact us.

## Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.



# Charging Your Vehicle

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot

environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.

## Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact us.

## User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact us.

## Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact us about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

## Ground Leakage Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

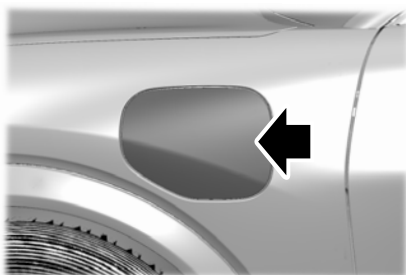
Potential shock hazard – immediately turn off circuit breaker for the outlet within home. Discontinue use. Contact us about obtaining a replacement.

**Note:** When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator will illuminate if not charging. The unit will turn off if breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view vehicle charging status remotely via the vehicle App.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.



**Note:** Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

## CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

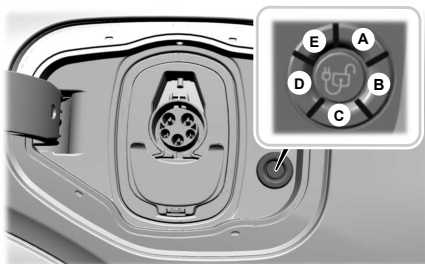
The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When zone A is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When zone A illuminates, and zone B is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When zones A and B illuminate and zone C is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.

- When zones A, B, and C illuminate, and zone D is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When zones A, B, C, and D illuminate, and zone E is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.



**Note:** When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly illuminated in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then A, B, and C light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging.

Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

Amber is used to indicate charge faults.

# Charging Your Vehicle



**Note:** Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the mobile power cord, charge station or electrical supply.

**Note:** If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates solidly in an amber color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

**Note:** If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or mobile power cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes amber continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the mobile power cord, charge station or electrical supply.

## AC CHARGING

### CHARGING AT HOME



AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

### CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE-

The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

To charge the high voltage battery:

You must unwrap the mobile power cord completely before charging.

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).

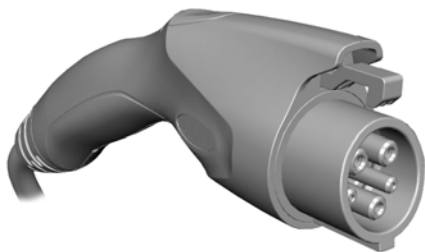
**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

2. Press the center right edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Plug the connector into the control box.

**Note:** To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the mobile power cord's indicators illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

# Charging Your Vehicle



**Note:** Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler. When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

**Note:** Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

**Note:** There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

**Note:** If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center, or click on Live chat. To ensure superior service, please take note of your serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## Stopping Charging



**WARNING:** To safely discontinue charging at any time, follow the disconnect instructions in stopping charging. Charging will automatically and safely come to a stop. The BLUE STATUS indicator remains ON solid when the coupler is removed.

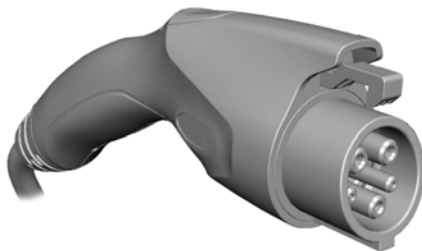
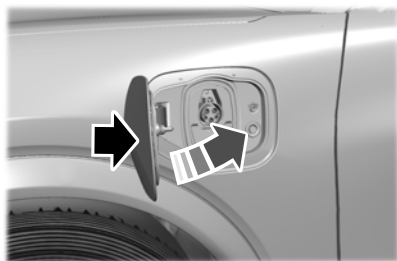
Using the mobile power cord:

1. Push the latch and remove the charge coupler from the vehicle.
2. Remove the connector plug from the wall outlet.

**Note:** Do not pull the wall plug from the wall or the connector from the mobile power cord control box, while your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.

## Charging Your Vehicle



3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

### CHARGING IN PUBLIC



AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

2. Press the center right hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

**Note:** An adapter is required for charging stations that use the North American Charging Standard (NACS) plug.



**Note:** Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler. When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

**Note:** There could be a delay in light ring illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the app located in the vehicle touchscreen as well as the vehicle app on a mobile device with pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Rates for charging varies by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the app may not function as intended.

**Note:** Depending on the region, the functionality of the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charging Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charging Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## Stopping Charging



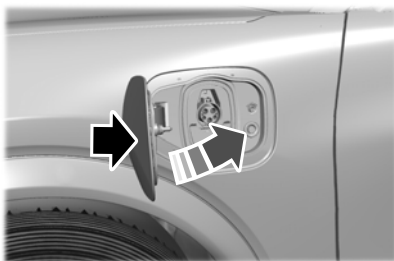
**WARNING:** To safely discontinue charging at any time, follow the disconnect instructions in stopping charging. Charging will automatically and safely come to a stop. The BLUE STATUS indicator remains ON solid when the coupler is removed.

Using the mobile power cord:

1. Push the latch and remove the charge coupler from the vehicle.
2. Remove the connector plug from the wall outlet.

**Note:** Do not pull the wall plug from the wall or the connector from the mobile power cord control box, while your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.



3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

## DC CHARGING



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle App.

Ending the charge at 100% maximizes the driving range for your next trip. Ending the charge at 80% or lower helps to preserve the health of the high voltage battery. Charge rates are significantly slower above 80% state of charge.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging allows the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

## Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** The system could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

**Note:** When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

**Note:** Charge times could vary depending on ambient air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

**Note:** The DC charging rate could be reduced to maximize the life of the battery.

To charge the high voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

**Note:** An adapter is required for charging stations that use the North American Charging Standard (NACS) plug.



**Note:** Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler. Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the handle is properly engaged, the light ring illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

**Note:** The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Information about the public charge stations is available through the app located in the vehicle touchscreen as well as the vehicle app on a mobile device with pricing, power levels, and real time availability. Rates for charging varies by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

**Note:** If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the app may not function as intended.

**Note:** Depending on the region, the functionality of the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.



# Charging Your Vehicle

**Note:** When charging your vehicle at a public charge station, follow the directions on the charge station.

## Stopping Charging

1. Push the coupler unlock button on the light ring and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.



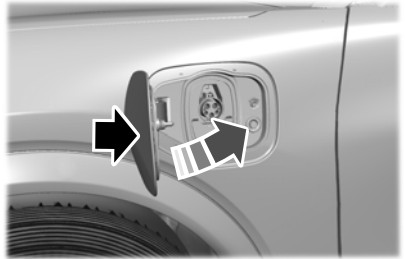
2. Close the dust cap for the additional lower connectors.

**Note:** Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so can lead to damage to your vehicle and the charge coupler.

**Note:** You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

**Note:** You can also unlock the cord through the vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

**Note:** You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



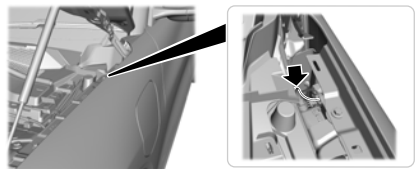
3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

## CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

If your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler, you can manually release it.

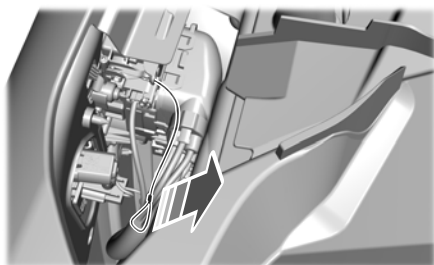
Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the hood.
3. Remove the inner luggage compartment shields. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 281).



4. Between the gap of the hood and windshield, access the manual release mechanism and pull the pull ring firmly, perpendicularly towards the center of your vehicle. Once pulled, make sure you do not tangle the pull ring cord as it resets on the next charge session.

# Charging Your Vehicle



5. Remove the charge coupler from the charge port.
6. Reinstall the inner luggage compartment shields. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 281).
7. Close the hood.



**Note:** The next time you plug in to charge your vehicle, the locking mechanism re-engages and the pull ring resets.

## CHARGING SETTINGS

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower-cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set an upper charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up in the center display or in the vehicle app.

To view your charge settings:

1.  Press to open the settings menu.
2.  Press charge settings.

## Charge Status

Shows the present state of charging system.

Charge Status	Details
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the vehicle app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.

# Charging Your Vehicle

Charge Status	Details
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC fast charge station and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.
Charge station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charging station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charge station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charging station.

## Charge Status Indicators

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

## High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

# Charging Your Vehicle

---

## Estimated Vehicle Driving Range

Displays the estimated distance the vehicle can travel with the current high voltage battery charge level. See **Vehicle Range Display** (page 112).

## Live Charging Information

When the vehicle is charging, the charging information is displayed on the charging screen:

- Live Charging Power.
- Live Charging Current.

**Note:** Live charging current is displayed only when the vehicle is AC charging.

## Target Charge

Displays the charge percentage at which charging stops and can be adjusted using the main slider.

**Note:** Daily and Trip labels are displayed to suggest the target charge for each of these usages considering battery life and vehicle range.

## Charging End Time

When charging, the estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the end time displays based on known charging infrastructure.

**Note:** Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.

## Departures Times Card

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

Press the Departures Times card to access the departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

**Note:** By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

**Note:** You can also access this feature using the vehicle app. Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.

## Preferred Charge Times Card

Displays the preferred charge times set for the current location.

Press the preferred charge times card to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

When you are at a saved charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred charge schedule. You can set one preferred charge time for weekdays and another one for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

# Charging Your Vehicle

---

**Note:** For saved charging locations, your vehicle charges during your preferred charge times. Charging outside these charge time windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.

**Note:** You can also access this feature using the vehicle app.

## Advanced Menu

Allows you to limit the current rate when AC charging.

## Departure and Comfort

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

**Note:** The departure and comfort settings do not apply when connected to a DC fast charger.

1. Press the departures times card on the charge settings screen.
2. Select a time for each day of the week you want your settings to apply. Select the hour and minutes as well as your desired comfort level. Your selected days or times now display your departure and comfort settings. Press save to apply your settings. The departures times card on the charge settings screen updates appropriately.

**Note:** Save your departure settings before selecting additional days or times. The process must be repeated in order to add additional unique departure times and comfort levels.

**Note:** Cabin conditioning comfort level could vary depending on if you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.

## Preferred Charge Times

Follow these steps to set preferred charge times for a charging location.

**Note:** The vehicle uses your current location to create the new charge schedule. Before saving a new location, ensure that the vehicle has successfully charged at that location for at least a few minutes.

**Note:** Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.

1. Press the preferred charge times card on the charge settings screen.
2. To add the current charging location, press the add location button. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.
3. Edit the nickname of the location and press the next button.

**Note:** The name of the location cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

4. Set one preferred charge time for weekdays and or weekends by specifying if the charging time applies to weekdays or weekends and the start and end time of the charge time. After defining the preferred charge times for weekdays and weekends, press the save button to store the settings.

**Note:** Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

# Charging Your Vehicle

5. Return to the previous screen and see the summary of the preferred charge times for this location. Press the back arrow to return to the charge settings screen or press the location to change its settings.

**Note:** *Reaching your target charge by your next departure time is always the priority. When preferred charge times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle typically begins charging right away after plugging in.*

## AC Rate

Follow these steps to set the AC rate and limit the current anytime the vehicle is AC charging.

1. Press the advanced menu on the charge settings screen.
2. Set the AC rate using the slider.
3. Return to the previous screen to save the value set.

## USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



Plugged into charger.

# Charging Your Vehicle

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle Plugged In ? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation it is unplugged before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message promptly before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that HV battery can no longer support the 12V battery. Plug In your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12V battery at a healthy state.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.

# Charging Your Vehicle

---

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### **Why does my vehicle not charge with the mobile power cord?**

- Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from the vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is connected properly into the mobile power cord control box. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

### **Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?**

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

## CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE VIDEOS

[Charging Basics](#)

[Understanding the Ford Mobile Charger](#)  
[Video Link](#)



# Electric Motor

## SELECTOR POSITIONS

### ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



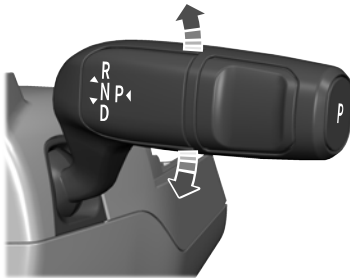
**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the steering column.



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).
3. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
4. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
5. Press the park (P) button to select park (P).

## PARK (P)



**WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

**Note:** Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 185).

# Electric Motor

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Roll-Away Protection Work** (page 179).

**Note:** A tone could sound when you select park (P).

## REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

## DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



**Note:** The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

## SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

**Note:** This mode could be unavailable if your 12 volt battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 volt battery to run out of charge.

**Note:** This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** If the battery has run out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.

# Electric Motor

4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

**Note:** You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

## Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

## ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Vehicle Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

### Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

## ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

### HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is always active by default. It secures the vehicle by automatically shifting to park (P) if the driver exits or switches the vehicle off without shifting to park (P).

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. When deactivated the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver exits the vehicle, such as in an automatic car wash.

**Note:** You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with the power on.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. See **Towing Your Vehicle** (page 298).

### ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You shift into park (P).
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

# Electric Motor

---

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

**Note:** *If drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.*

## SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

### Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Power your vehicle on.
3. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** *An instructional message appears.*

5. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

**Note:** *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

**Note:** *The neutral (N) indicator on the selector may flash in this mode.*

### Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

# All-Wheel Drive

## HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 285).

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

Different tire sizes between the front and rear axles can cause system damage.

## ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Off	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function.

# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

If your accelerator pedal becomes stuck or trapped:

- Apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce power.
- Bring your vehicle to a complete stop and place it in park (P).
- Switch the power off.
- Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. If your vehicle has to be towed, we recommend that you contact a professional towing service.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 309).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

# Brakes



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 183).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

**Note:** We recommend you to use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft®(Canada) PM-20(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2

# Brakes

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Lamps may vary depending on region.

## BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Is occasional brake noise normal

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear, and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 318).



# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electronic parking brake switch is on the center console.

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake. The red warning lamp flashes, then steadily illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 177).

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency. Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the power on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 295).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph). Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

# Reverse Brake Assist

## WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).

## HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

# Reverse Brake Assist

**Note:** The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

**Note:** You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

## SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Reverse Brake Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).

2. Switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

**Note:** If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert, the reverse brake assist relies on input from only the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

## OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

# Reverse Brake Assist

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist Not Available See Manual	Displays when a related system or feature error occurs. Make sure the exterior cameras are clean and not obstructed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Fault	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

# Reverse Brake Assist

---

## REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 189).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 258).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on.
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 194).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 203). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 260).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

**Note:** If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.

# Hill Start Assist

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.



**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Switch Auto Hold on or off.

**Note:** You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough pressure to the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 185).

**Note:** The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

# Traction Control

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

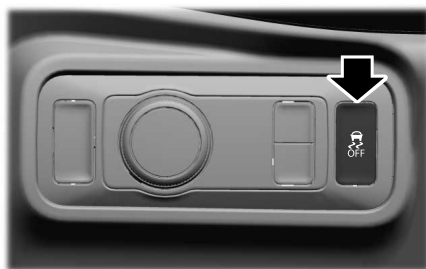


**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

If you press the switch, it turns traction control off.



When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear in the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to turn traction control on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

**Note:** When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

### Stability and Traction Control Indicator



If the indicator does not illuminate on start-up, or remains on when driving the vehicle, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

# Traction Control

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

#### System Messages



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on

start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition.

The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

### TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Stability Control

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing power.

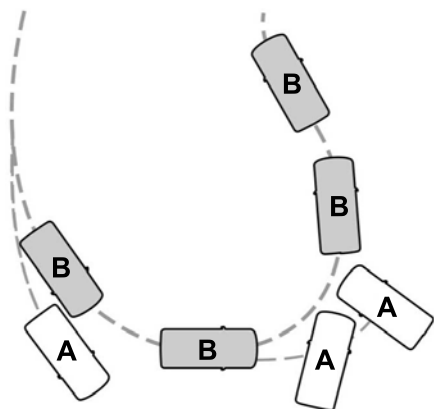
### Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

### Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **What Is Traction Control** (page 194).

# Stability Control



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

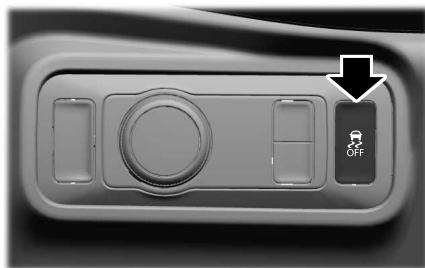
## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

You can switch these systems off by using the button to the left of the steering wheel.

If you press the button, it will turn traction control off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 194).

If you press and hold for 5 seconds, it turns stability control off.



Shifting into reverse (R) disables the system.

**Note:** With electronic stability control off, E-AWD protection controls remain active and could be noticeable in slippery conditions.

**Note:** While stability control can be turned off in any drive mode, the acceleration response in engage mode provides the most refined longitudinal control of the vehicle.

**Note:** When you choose the drive mode **Unbridle** and electronic stability control is off, it reduces the level of deceleration.

# Stability Control

ESC Features				
Button Functions	Mode	Stability Control Off Light	Electronic Stability Control	Traction Control System
Default at start-up	-	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Traction control off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	ESC disabled	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	ESC fully enabled	Off	Enabled	Enabled

# Stability Control

---

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Steering

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

### HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

#### Adaptive Learning

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and crash avoidance systems.

**Note:** *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

#### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

**Note:** *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.*

### ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10

seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

**Note:** *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.



# Steering

## STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

## STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

**Note:** *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

## STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

You can only switch the audible tone on and off. The parking aid system remains on at all times.

### Muting the Audible Tone



Shift into reverse (R) and press the button on the rear view camera display screen to switch the system's audible tone on and off.

# Parking Aids

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

## LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

## REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

# Parking Aids

## FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

## LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

## FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID INDICATORS

### Parking Aid Indicators Shown When 360 Degree Camera Views are not Available



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color. The indicators for closer objects appear closer to the vehicle icon.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

**Note:** If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.

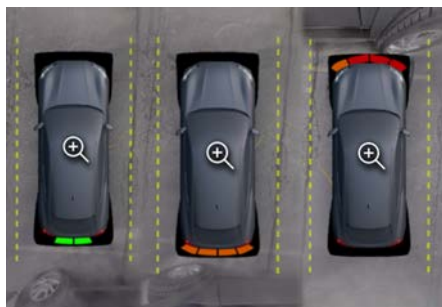
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

**Note:** If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 206).

**Note:** Front park aid indicators may not be available.

### Parking Aid Indicators Shown in 360 Degree Camera Views (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

# Parking Aids

**Note:** If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.

Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked. The distance indicators appear white.
- A system fault occurs.

**Note:** If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 206).

## PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Message	Action
Park Aid Fault	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Parking Sensors Blocked	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.

## PARKING AIDS VIDEOS

[Reverse Sensing System Video Link](#)

# Rear View Camera

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the liftgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

**Note:** If the view comes on while the vehicle is not in reverse (R) and you have not recently shifted out of reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

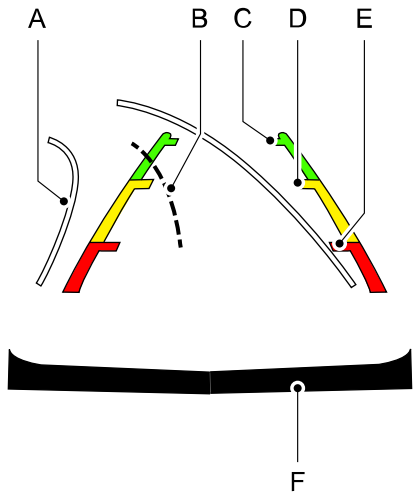
## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera is on the liftgate or tailgate. It provides a view of the area behind your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.



- A. Active guide lines.
- B. Centerline.
- C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F. Rear bumper.

# Rear View Camera

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

### ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

### SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Rear View Camera. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Switch Rear View Camera Delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 9 km/h (6 mph).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).



# 360 Degree Camera

## WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras which provide visibility around your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

**Note:** Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

## LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

### Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

### Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

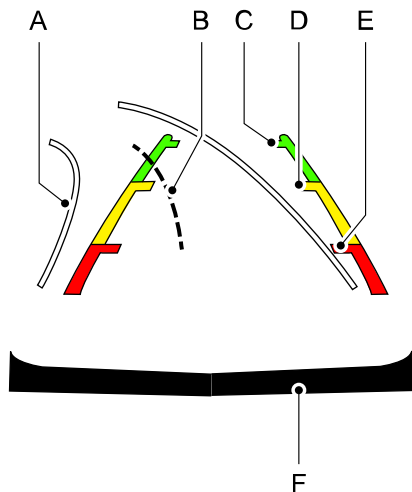
### Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

# 360 Degree Camera

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the selector is in reverse (R).



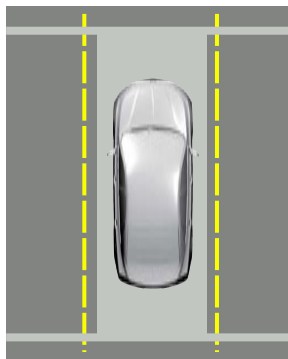
- A Active guidelines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone.
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



Press the camera button on the touchscreen.

# 360 Degree Camera

**Note:** The front 360 camera is the default camera view. You can access the other front camera views from the screen.

**Note:** The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R).

You can choose from the following camera views on the touchscreen:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button.

**Note:** The 360 degree camera system remains on when your vehicle is in motion at low speed. The rear camera views remain on at all speeds when in reverse (R).

## SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



**Normal + 360 view:** Contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



**Normal view:** Provides an image of what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.



**Split view:** Provides an extended view of what is in front of or behind your vehicle.




Zooms in on the image.


# Adaptive Cruise Control

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK


Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.


## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.


 **WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.


## When Following a Vehicle


 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

 **WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

 **WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The system may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror. The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

**Note:** *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

**Note:** *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 225).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

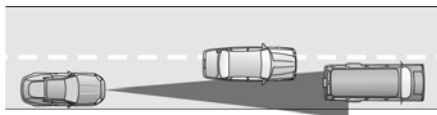


- 1 Camera.
- 2 Radar sensor.

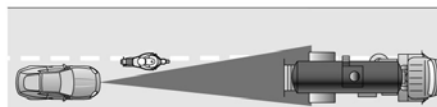
# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Detection Issues Can Occur:

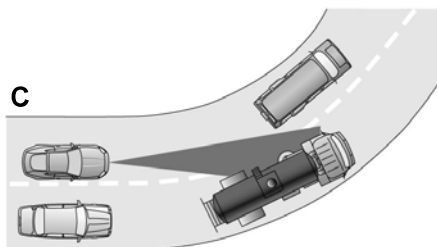
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph (20 km/h). If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 15 mph (20 km/h), adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is active or switch the vehicle off.

**Note:** When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display when you initially activate adaptive cruise control.



After a few seconds, the graphic in the instrument cluster display changes to show that adaptive cruise control is active.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

**SET-**

# Adaptive Cruise Control

The set speed adjusts to 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The system activates from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.*

## Manually Changing the Set Speed


**SET+** Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the preferred speed.

**SET-** Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the preferred speed.


You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

## Setting The Adaptive Cruise Speed from Standby Mode

 Press the button from standby mode to set the cruise control speed to the current vehicle speed.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

 Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

## Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

### Without an Active BlueCruise Service Plan:

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



### With an Active BlueCruise Service Plan:

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than approximately three minutes, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

The following conditions must be met before your vehicle auto-resumes:

- You are facing forward and paying attention to the road ahead.
- The road is clear of obstacles such as pedestrians or other vehicles crossing your path.

# Adaptive Cruise Control


If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.

## Information Messages

Message	Details
Auto-Resume	(Only available with an active BlueCruise service plan). The vehicle is stopped behind a lead vehicle and all conditions are met for the vehicle to accelerate with the lead vehicle once the lead vehicle begins to accelerate.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move and all of the auto-resume conditions are not met, you are prompted to press the resume button. Pay attention to the road ahead and surroundings to make sure that it is safe to resume. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Stopped	Cruise control does not automatically resume when this display is active. Use the accelerator pedal to resume.

**Note:** *If approximately three minutes at a stop is exceeded, the vehicle cancels adaptive cruise control and the electric parking brake is set. The driver is required to resume control of the vehicle and release the electric parking brake.*

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the indicator remains blue, the set speed is dimmed and the lead vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Normal Cruise Control.



When you select normal cruise control the cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane.

**Note:** *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

### LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 212).

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 220).
- You have adaptive cruise control enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- A trailer is not detected.

**Note:** *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.*

**Note:** *If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.*

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 220).

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.

- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 219).

**Note:** *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

**Note:** The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 220).

## Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering.

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 221).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

**Note:** If the system detects significant inactivity, a 'Lane Centering Unavailable' message displays in the instrument cluster and lane centering is disabled until the next time you start your vehicle.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

## LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

## LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering Assist Not Available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume Control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.
Ensure Face Can Be Detected to Continue Using Lane Centering	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you, adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

### HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 223).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 269).

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.



**WARNING:** The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



**WARNING:** The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 212).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 238). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

**Note:** *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

## SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on or off.

## ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on.
4. Press Tolerance.
5. Adjust the slider to set the tolerance.

**Note:** *You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.*

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

### Speed Sign Indicator

When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

### Road Geometry Indicator

When the system detects a curve or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Road Geometry Indicator Symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.

## PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

**Note:** *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Message	Details
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Cruise Control Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Control Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue.

## Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
	Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Cruise Control Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

## WHAT IS BLUECRUISE

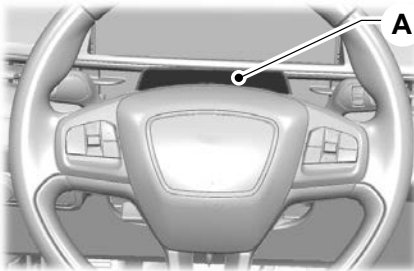
BlueCruise keeps your vehicle centered in the lane and offers a hands-free driving mode in certain situations when using adaptive cruise control.

## HOW DOES BLUECRUISE WORK

BlueCruise uses cameras to monitor your vehicle position within a lane and applies steering support to keep your vehicle centered in the lane.

Using the cameras and location information, BlueCruise allows you to remove your hands from the steering wheel and offers a hands-free driving mode in certain areas.

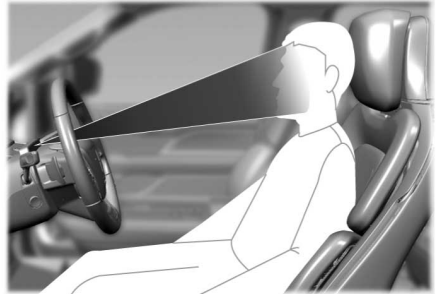
When active, BlueCruise uses a driver facing camera and infrared lighting to monitor your eyes and head position to detect if you are distracted. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes back to the road.



A Camera and lighting areas.



Steering column too high, camera cannot see the face.



Appropriate position, camera can see the face.

For the most optimal experience from the driver facing camera:

- Make sure to not wear any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position and/or lower the steering column so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.

**Note:** When BlueCruise is active, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, camera data may record through the vehicle event data recorder. See **Event Data** (page 23).

**Note:** No data records under normal driving conditions.

## BLUECRUISE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for keeping your eyes on the road at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system attempts to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane as well as maintain speed and gap control. The system may not be able to perform these tasks in all situations. Do not use the system in complex or uncertain driving conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Your vehicle could drift out of the lane of travel. Always be prepared to manually steer your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## BLUECRUISE REQUIREMENTS

BlueCruise only activates when all of the following occur:

- BlueCruise service plan is active. See Ford.com (<https://www.ford.com/connectedservices/>) or the Ford mobile app for details.
- BlueCruise is enabled in your center display screen. See **BlueCruise Settings** (page 230).
- Adaptive cruise control is switched on.
- Automatic Emergency Braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 266).
- The driver seatbelt is fastened.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel.
- Your eyes are on the road.

**Note:** For hands-free mode to work, your vehicle must be on certain limited access divided freeways.

**Note:** The system may require updated software for hands-free mode. See **Vehicle Software Updates** (page 397).

**Note:** Without an active BlueCruise subscription, your vehicle is still capable of lane centering. This system requires you to keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 220).

## BLUECRUISE LIMITATIONS

Any of the following conditions could result in BlueCruise not correctly operating:

- You do not have your vehicle centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- You are applying a low amount of steering input.
- You are using the system in areas under construction.
- If you make any aftermarket modifications to the steering system.
- You are using a spare tire.

The driver-facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have visual impairment, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions significantly change.
- You are not in the camera's field of view.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around extensively.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

**Note:** The system has limited steering assistance and may not be sufficient for all driving situations.

**Note:** In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line.

**Note:** The information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

## BLUECRUISE SETTINGS

### Enabling BlueCruise

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering with Hands-Free.

### Enabling Activation Prompts

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Activation Prompts.

## SWITCHING BLUECRUISE ON AND OFF

### Switching BlueCruise On

The controls are on the steering wheel.

#### Using Activation Prompts



When the prompt appears, press the button to switch BlueCruise on.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the system is on, the indicator color changes to indicate the system status.

**Note:** You must enable activation prompts in the touchscreen.

### Using Steering Wheel Controls



Press the adaptive cruise control button to activate BlueCruise.

### Switching BlueCruise Off



Press the adaptive cruise control button when the system is active or in standby mode.

BlueCruise turns off through each ignition cycle.

## BLUECRUISE ALERTS

When BlueCruise is providing hands-on driving or transitioning to hands-on driving from hands-free driving and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you with an audible warning and a message in the instrument cluster display to put your hands on the steering wheel.

When BlueCruise is providing hands-on or hands-free driving and detects you are not looking at the road for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to return your eyes to the road. Depending on where you are looking, the alert can be a message in the instrument cluster and an audible warning.

If you do not react to the warnings, the system alerts you to take control of your vehicle, quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

**Note:** If the system detects significant inactivity, it disables until the next time you start your vehicle.

## BLUECRUISE AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels BlueCruise, for example, no lane markings available, a message appears in the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds.



If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel. Then press and release the button to reactivate BlueCruise.

System cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross.
- Your eyes are not on the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel.

If you have your hands on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road when the feature is active and a cancellation occurs, the system displays a canceled graphic in the instrument cluster and sounds an audible warning.

If you are not paying attention to the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel and a cancellation occurs, the system displays a message in the instrument cluster, and sounds an audible warning until you resume control.

If you do not resume control in time, BlueCruise quickly activates and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

**Note:** If the system detects repeated inactivity, it disables until the next time you start your vehicle.

## BLUECRUISE INDICATORS



When on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the status.

Gray indicates BlueCruise is on but inactive.

Green indicates BlueCruise is active and applying continuous steering support.

Blue indicates BlueCruise is active and hands-free driving mode is available.

## Hands-On Driving Support Available



When this indicator is present, you must keep your hands on the steering wheel.

## Hands-Free Driving Support Available



A graphic in the instrument cluster of a steering wheel without hands indicates the hands-free driving mode is available.

When this indicator is present, you can remove your hands from the steering wheel.

## AUTOMATIC LANE CHANGE (IF EQUIPPED)

The system performs an automatic lane change if a slower moving vehicle ahead in your lane is detected. The system makes a single lane change into the adjacent left lane if a lane exists and there is space available in that lane. Automatic lane change is an extension of lane change assist.

If you are in the left lane, the system returns your vehicle to the adjacent lane to the right when space becomes available to move you out of the passing lane.

This feature is available above 65 km/h (40 mph).



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Automatic lane change does not move your vehicle to the next lane if traffic is identified in the selected lane. If traffic is identified after the lane change is initiated, it cancels.

**Note:** Automatic lane change does not operate when the system identifies construction zones, highway entries and exits or an ending adjacent lane.

**Note:** Automatic lane change operates independently from the planned navigation route.

**Note:** An automatic lane change may occur when a high occupancy vehicle lane is open. It is your responsibility to know the laws and drive in the appropriate lane.

## Overriding Automatic Lane Change

Hold the steering wheel or tap the turn signal lever in the opposite direction to cancel an automatic lane change.

## Switching Automatic Lane Change On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Switch Adaptive Cruise Control on.
3. Switch Lane Centering with Hands-Free on.
4. Switch Lane Change Assist on.
5. Switch Automatic Lane Change on or off.



**Note:** If automatic lane change is switched off, lane change assist remains active. See **Lane Change Assist** (page 233).

## Automatic Lane Change Indicators



A lane change path and message are shown in the instrument cluster display.

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST

### HOW DOES LANE CHANGE ASSIST WORK



Lane change assist can automatically perform a single lane change when you request the lane change using the turn signal lever. This feature is available above 65 km/h (40 mph).

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use the lane change assist system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The lane change assist system is not a replacement for careful driving.

1. Make sure the lane you are requesting is clear of traffic or obstacles.
2. Tap or latch the lever in the direction of your planned lane change.
3. Once the lane change is complete, move the turn signal lever back to the middle position if necessary.

**Note:** When using lane change assist you can tap or latch the lever.

## Lane Change Suggestion

If you are approaching or have been following a slower moving vehicle, the system may suggest a lane change to pass that vehicle using an available passing lane.

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Lane change assist will not perform the requested maneuver if traffic is identified in the selected lane.

## SWITCHING LANE CHANGE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Change Assist to toggle the system on and off.

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST CANCELLATION

To cancel lane change assist, manually steer your vehicle or return the turn signal lever to the middle position.

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

## LANE CHANGE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane busy	The lane you have selected to enter has a vehicle or obstacle.
No lane seen	A lane is not recognized or available to perform the requested maneuver.
Canceled by driver	The driver has manually overridden the lane change.
Changing lanes	The requested lane change is being performed.
Lane change possible	If desired, press the turn signal lever in the direction indicated by the lane change suggestion to initiate the lane change.

**Note:** The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

## IN-LANE REPOSITIONING

### HOW DOES IN-LANE REPOSITIONING WORK

BlueCruise with in-lane repositioning uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors together with the front windshield camera sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system automatically adjusts your vehicle's position in the lane based on the current driving situation.

**Note:** In-lane repositioning is active only when BlueCruise is enabled while traveling on divided highways and when any of the following occur:

- Passing or being passed by adjacent lane vehicles in close proximity.
- In a curve.
- Driving in outer lanes.

**Note:** In certain situations, the vehicle may bias without showing the indicators.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

**Note:** The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.

### SWITCHING IN-LANE REPOSITIONING ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.

3. Press Lane Centering with Hands-Free.
4. Press In-Lane Repositioning to toggle the system on or off.

### IN-LANE REPOSITIONING INDICATORS



Biased towards right-hand side of the lane.



Biased towards left-hand side of the lane.

## BLUECRUISE – TROUBLESHOOTING

## BLUECRUISE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel.
Watch the Road	Return your attention to the road.
BlueCruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Ensure Face Can Be Detected to Continue Using BlueCruise	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you, adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver monitor camera fault See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
BlueCruise On Watch the road Be prepared to resume control	BlueCruise is active, keep your attention on the road.
BlueCruise available Press {ICON} to activate	The system is in standby mode, press the button on the steering wheel to activate.

**Note:** *The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending on which cluster type you have.*

# Drive Mode Control

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

This feature connects multiple vehicle systems through a single interface, providing you with enhanced vehicle control and driving dynamics for different driving scenarios, terrains, weather, or various road conditions.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2. Select an available drive mode.

**Note:** *Drive mode changes may not be available when your vehicle is off.*

## DRIVE MODES

### ENGAGE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. Steering is tuned for normal driving. The interior lights and cluster graphics are set to soft blue and the battery state of charge gauge displays.

### ENGAGE - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. Steering and active damping are tuned for normal driving. The interior lights and cluster graphics are set to soft blue and the battery state of charge gauge displays.

## RALLYSPORT - VEHICLES WITH: MUSTANG MACH-E RALLY



This feature adjusts the unbridle mode to provide high-performance off pavement driving for sprint style dirt and multi-terrain courses. This mode increases and improves the accelerator pedal reaction when activated. Traction and stability controls are set to their least invasive settings for optimal performance and vehicle control. The interior sound has increased presence, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic related to your acceleration and steering inputs.

To use this feature, you must be in unbridle mode with the rallysport slider selected with the battery at operating temperature. When using this mode, one pedal drive is not available and other driver assistance features disabled.

**Note:** *This feature may not be available below ambient temperature, or battery temperature -18°C (0°F).*

**Note:** *If the feature is not available, charge your vehicle until the battery has sufficient charge greater than 10% SOC, and the HV battery temperature is warm.*

## UNBRIDLE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



This mode is for sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. The acceleration response increases and provides a strong deceleration rate when you lift off the accelerator pedal. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a sportier steering feel. The interior sound increases, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic that grows based on your acceleration and steering inputs.

# Drive Mode Control

## UNBRIDLE - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Unbridle mode is for sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a strong deceleration rate when you lift off the accelerator pedal. This mode increases acceleration response and provides a sportier steering feel. Active damping is tuned for performance. The interior sound increases, and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic that grows based on your acceleration and steering inputs.

### Unbridle Extended



This feature adjusts unbridle mode to provide high-performance driving and is for track and closed course use only. When activated, this mode provides balanced power output for lap time consistency. The accelerator pedal calibrates for improved propulsion control. The system provides more performance orientated traction and stability control. In this mode, traction and stability control intervention reduces and tunes specifically for track usage only. The interior sound has increased presence and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to orange with a graphic related to your acceleration and steering inputs.

To use this feature, you must be in unbridle mode with the unbridle extend slider selected with the battery at operating temperature. When using this mode, one pedal drive is not available and other driver assistance features disable.

**Note:** This feature is only available when the HV battery state of charge is above about 10%, the ambient temperature is above -18°C (0°F) and the HV battery temperature is warm.

## WHISPER - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Whisper mode is for relaxed driving and adverse weather conditions. This is the best mode for driving in slippery conditions. This mode decreases accelerator response at partial inputs. Steering tunes for comfort. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle slowly decelerates allowing for a more comfortable ride. The interior sound turns off and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to blue with a graphic that starts to illuminate blue as you drive efficiently at consistent speeds.

## WHISPER - VEHICLES WITH: ACTIVE DAMPERS



Whisper mode is for relaxed driving and adverse weather conditions. This is the best mode for driving in slippery conditions. This mode decreases accelerator response at partial inputs. Steering and active damping tunes for comfort. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle slowly decelerates allowing for a more comfortable ride. The interior sound turns off and the ambient lights and cluster graphics are set to blue with a graphic that starts to illuminate blue as you drive efficiently at consistent speeds.

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

# Drive Mode Control

---

**Note:** *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.*

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive Mode Not Available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Drive Mode Control

---

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why did the system default to normal mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

### Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from engage mode or active mode to whisper mode.

### How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode will activate within several seconds, if all the appropriate pre-conditions are met.

### How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For available drive modes, See **Drive Modes** (page 238).

## Will drive modes impact my vehicle's energy consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle's energy consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style will also affect the energy consumption.

# One Pedal Drive

## WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep.

See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 242).

## ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move if the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

**Note:** Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

## ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is not available when any of the following occur:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position, such as park (P) when driving.
- Using cruise control.

- Selecting unbridle extend drive mode (GT only).
- Turning off stability control.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce the accelerator's ability to slow the vehicle.

## SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Switch 1-Pedal Drive on or off.

## ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

# Lane Keeping System

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK


The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the lane of travel.


When the camera detects a drift out of the lane of travel, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the lane of travel.


The driver can select one of three modes:


- Alert (if equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid


## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.


 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 64 km/h (40 mph).

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.

# Lane Keeping System

- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 64 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

**Note:** When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

**Note:** The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2. Press Lane-Keeping System.
3. Press Lane-Keeping Mode.
4. Select a mode.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Lane Keeping System.
3. Press Lane Keeping Intensity.
4. Select a setting.

**Note:** This setting is not available in all modes.

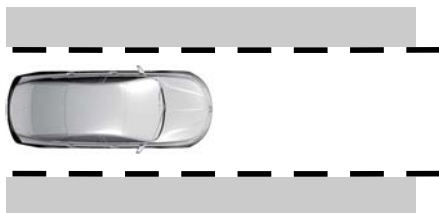
## ALERT MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

# Lane Keeping System

## HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



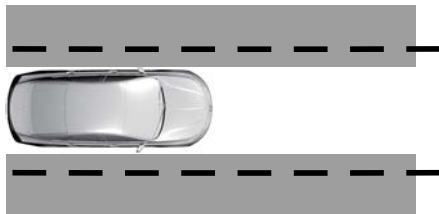
When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

### HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



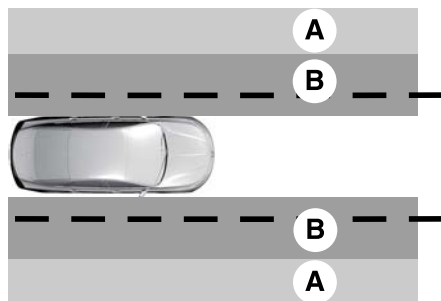
The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

## ALERT AND AID MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

### HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.



When you switch the system off, a telltale appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help you become aware of and steer away from vehicles in your blind spot during lane changes.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select "Aid" or "Alert + Aid" from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

# Lane Keeping System

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

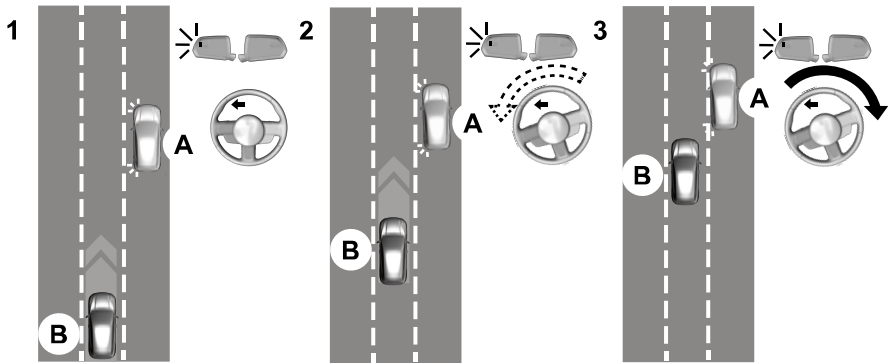
Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a speed higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather obstructing the sensors.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



**Diagram 1:** Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

**Diagram 2:** The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

**Diagram 3:** Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

# Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot

information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 251).

## Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if your blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is suppressed until the failure is fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.



# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

# Lane Keeping System

---

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### **Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?**

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
- You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.

- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

### **Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?**

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

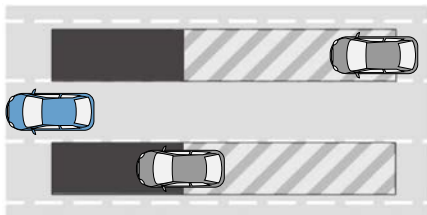
# Blind Spot Information System

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**Note:** *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone while overtaking.

**Note:** *For vehicles without the trailer coverage feature, we recommend that you switch the blind spot information system off when you attach a trailer.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

# Blind Spot Information System

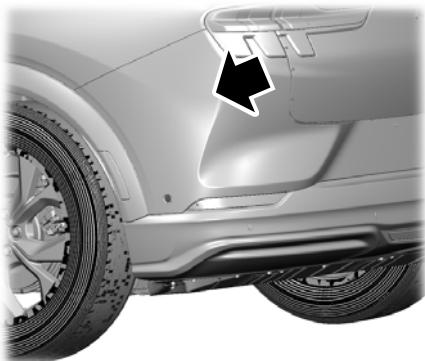
## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 253). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



# Blind Spot Information System



When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side from which the

vehicle is approaching. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Blind Spot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.

# Exit Warning

## WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert to notify the occupants about detected traffic approaching from the rear of the vehicle.

When approaching traffic is detected, the electronic door latches prevent the door adjacent to the hazard from opening. If the handle is pulled a second time the door will open.

## HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly past a fully open door. The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning operates in any gear position.



**Note:** The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.

## EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.

**WARNING:** Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

# Exit Warning

## EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. It remains on for about 3 minutes after turning your vehicle off. It turns off immediately when locking the doors. Exit warning will inform you when it turns off and operates in any gear position.

**Note:** Do not use this feature as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by automatically closing the doors.

**Note:** The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.

## Exit Warning Alert

**Note:** Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert during an exit when an occupant opens any door and a traffic object is approaching on the same side.

## Exit Warning Prevention (If Equipped)

Depending on your vehicle's features, exit warning is also designed to prevent the door latch from opening when a traffic object is approaching on the same side. In this situation, the inner door handle is disabled, and the door remains closed. A visual and audible warning is also present during a prevention. After the traffic object has passed and no additional traffic objects are approaching, the inner door handle is automatically enabled and the occupant can open the door to exit the vehicle.

**Note:** Occupants can override the prevention function and open the door while the traffic object is still approaching and the incident is still imminent by requesting the door to open twice quickly (within 5 seconds).

## Exit Warning and Power Child Lock (If Equipped)

Power child lock remains active and must be manually deactivated if you attempt to switch it off at the same time exit warning detects an approaching traffic object.

A visual warning occurs in this situation.



**Note:** The driver can override the exit warning with power child lock function by pressing the power child lock deactivation button twice quickly (within 5 seconds).

**Note:** When the exit warning and power child lock function is activated, doors can still be opened from outside.

# Exit Warning

## EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 252).

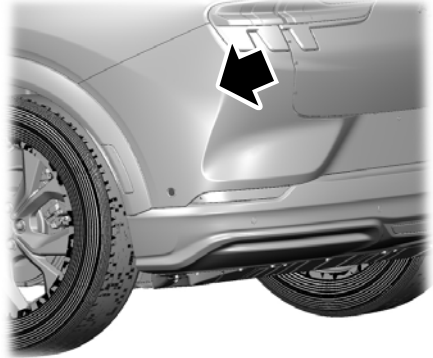
In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

## SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

## LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer or bike rack.*



# Exit Warning

---

## EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: Check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: Check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays when the exit warning system turns off or shuts down.
Exit Warning System fault	Displays when the exit warning system detects any system error.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

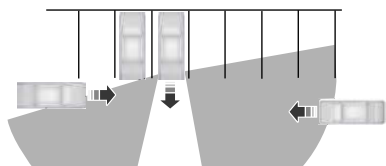
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

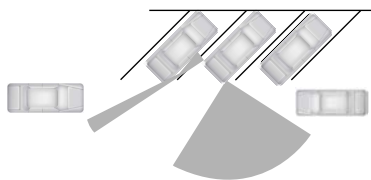
**Note:** *There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 8 km/h (5 mph). Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

**Note:** *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS





**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.





**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


# Cross Traffic Alert


 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.


 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

 **WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

**Note:** *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

**Note:** *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).

# Cross Traffic Alert

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.
- If you switch the traction system off, cross traffic alert does not apply the brakes.

**Note:** The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.

## Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the touchscreen.

**Note:** The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 1 m (3 ft). For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

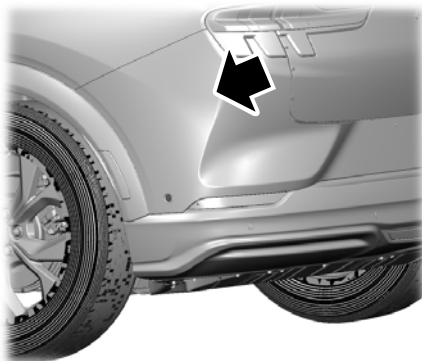
## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Cross Traffic Alert.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

## LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

**Note:** Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

# Cross Traffic Alert

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is

approaching.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross Traffic Alert Applying Brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has reverse brake assist See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages** (page 190).*

# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake support.
3. Automatic emergency braking.



**Alert:** When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

**Brake Support:** The system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system may apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

### Automatic Emergency Braking:

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

**Note:** If the pre-collision assist alerts are too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity results in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 263).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

# Pre-Collision Assist



**WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



**WARNING:** Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



**WARNING:** Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Automatic emergency braking may activate when a collision is imminent. The system cannot prevent all crashes, but may reduce crash severity. Do not test automatic emergency braking or forward collision warning. Testing this system must only be conducted by authorized test facilities using specialized equipment. Do not use automatic emergency braking to replace normal braking for any reason. Relying on automatic emergency braking to stop your vehicle may cause an unexpected accident which could lead to serious injury or death.*

**Note:** *The system does not detect animals.*

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 265).

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.

**Note:** *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables if your vehicle has the following drive modes and you select four-wheel drive low or manually disable AdvanceTrac™ and rock crawl mode.*

**Note:** *Brake support and automatic emergency braking can detect other vehicles up to the maximum speed of your vehicle.*

# Pre-Collision Assist

## Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or when the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

## Cyclist Detection Limitations

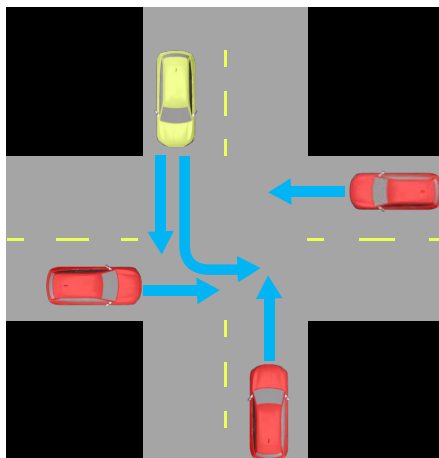
Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system can have reduced performance in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or where the system cannot distinguish them from a group.

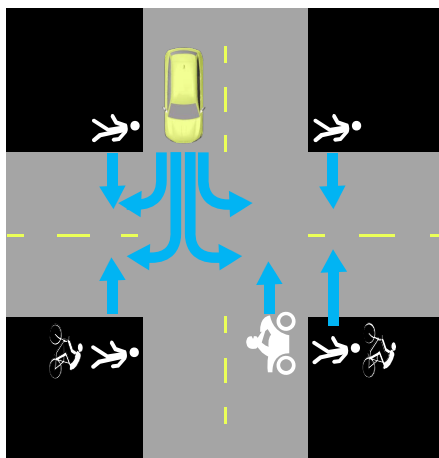
## Intersection Assist

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).

**Note:** In the following intersection scenarios, your vehicle is represented in yellow.



The previous image shows potential intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect the red vehicles if you encounter them within the appropriate detection range.





# Pre-Collision Assist

The previous image shows potential motorcycle, bicycle, and pedestrian intersection scenarios from the perspective of the yellow vehicle. The system may detect these threats if you encounter them within the appropriate detection speed.

## Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

This feature expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

## SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the system off.

## Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

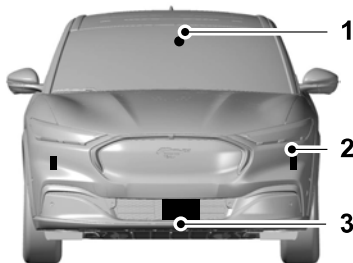
You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

- Change alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.

**Note:** If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor.
3. Corner radar (present on both sides).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display, something is obstructing the radar or front windshield camera. The radar sensor is behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 267).

**Note:** Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

# Pre-Collision Assist

**Note:** If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could appear in the instrument cluster display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor successfully recalibrates.

## FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

### WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Alert Sensitivity.
4. Select a setting.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or completely avoid the crash.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Auto Emergency Braking.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when automatic emergency braking is switched off using the settings menu.

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

**Note:** Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 262).

# Pre-Collision Assist

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

## SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Pre-Collision Assist.
3. Press Evasive Steering Assist.

4. Switch the feature on or off.

**Note:** If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

**Note:** If the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message, make sure the setting for automatic emergency braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 266). No action is needed unless an information message appears. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 262).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Pre-Collision Assist

---

## **PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if the windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed?**

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

### **What if the windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?**

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

### **What should I do if the surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed?**

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

### **What if the surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?**

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

### **Can weather or road conditions interfere with the radar signals?**

- Yes, weather such as heavy rain, spray or fog as well as water, snow or ice on the surface of the road can interfere with the radar signals. In these situations, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

### **What if the radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact?**

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

# Speed Sign Recognition

## WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

Speed sign recognition detects speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

## HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Speed sign recognition uses the front windshield camera to detect speed signs.

If your vehicle has speed sign recognition with Map Data, stored speed sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



**WARNING:** Not all traffic signs can be recognized by the system and displayed correctly.

**Note:** Always fit our original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

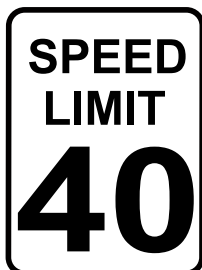
Speed sign recognition may not detect the correct speed due to:

- Construction zones.
- Outdated map data.
- Incorrect recognition of speed limits by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty, or distorted signs.

**Note:** The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

# Speed Sign Recognition

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, it appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

From the driver assistance menu, press Speed Limit Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 381).

You can adjust the following settings:

- Switch the speed warning on or off.
- Set the speed limit tolerance (if equipped).



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the Map Data is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

# Speed Sign Recognition

---

## **SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?**

- The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.

### **Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?**

- The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.

# Driver Alert

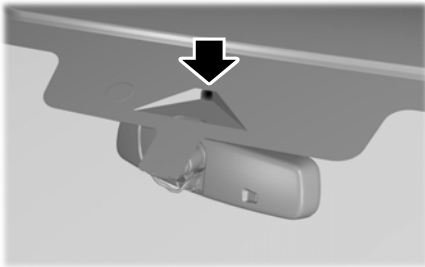
## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

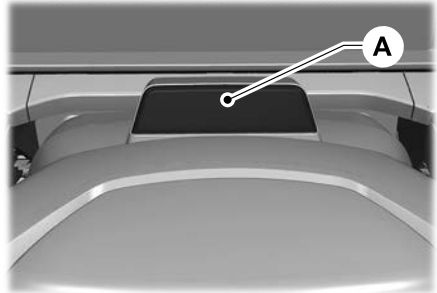
Driver Alert determines your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors through use of the front camera sensor behind the interior mirror.

If the system determines you are becoming drowsy, it alerts you to rest. If you continue to exhibit drowsy driving behavior, the system delivers an additional warning to rest as soon as it is safe to do so.



If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a "watch the road" warning accompanied by a tone.

If you continue to not look at the road, another "watch the road" warning appears with an additional tone. This warning remains visible in the instrument cluster until you press the "OK" button on the steering wheel.



A Camera and lighting areas behind the steering wheel.

## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



# Driver Alert



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

## DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Driver Alert.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

## DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

### System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

**Note:** The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

If there is a fault in the system, a telltale appears in the instrument cluster display.

# Driver Alert

---

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest soon.

# Load Carrying

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.

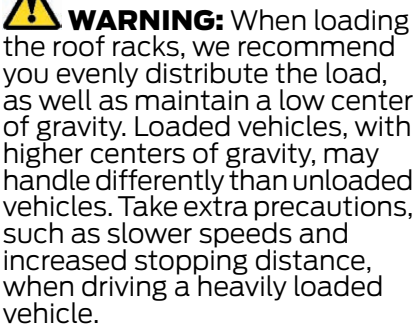


**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## Load Carrying




























Load carrying can also impact other systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 219). See **BlueCruise Precautions** (page 228). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 212).

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

## LOCATING THE SAFETY COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATION LABELS

### Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.				MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.			
DATE XXXXX	GWR XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	BEAR GEAR		DATE XXXXX	GWR XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	BEAR GEAR	
FRONT GRD XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	THRS XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	THRS XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	THRS XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	FRONT GRD XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	THRS XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	THRS XXXXXXXXXX(LB)	THRS XXXXXXXXXX(LB)
AT XXXXXXXXXX PSI	CONC'D AT XXXXX PSI	CONC'D AT XXXXX PSI	CONC'D AT XXXXX PSI	AT XXXXXXXXXX PSI	CONC'D AT XXXXX PSI	CONC'D AT XXXXX PSI	CONC'D AT XXXXX PSI
<p>THE VEHICLE COMPLIES TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.</p>							
							
							
							
							
							
							
							
							
							
							
							
							

FABRICADO POR FORD MOTOR CO.			
FORD: XXXXX		P/N: XXXXXXXXXX	
PRV: CAGEL XXXXLB	CON	PRV: L754C	CON: C
XXXXXXXXXXXX	LLANTAS	XXXXXXXXXXXX	LLANTAS
XXXXXXXXXX	RINES	XXXXXXXXXX	RINES
A XXX XXXXX	LB EN FIBR	A XXX XXXXX	LB EN FIBR
#/D: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TPO: US CERT VOID-EXPORT			
			
PRV: XXX	CON: XXX	PRV: XXX	CON: XXX
PRV: XXX	CON: XXX	PRV: XXX	CON: XXX
PRV: XXX	CON: XXX	PRV: XXX	CON: XXX
HECHO EN EE. UU. XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX UTA XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX			

The Safety Compliance Certification label is located on the door pillar, door latch post, or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING

## GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

# Load Carrying

**Note:** Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.


## WHAT IS THE GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING

Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.)

**Note:** Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

## CALCULATING PAYLOAD

**Tire and Loading Label Information Example:**


**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL : 5	FRONT: 2	REAR: 3
------------------	-----------	----------	---------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **385 kg or 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
SPARE	NONE	NONE

SEE OWNERS  
MANUAL FOR  
ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION

**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT**

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL : 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIERE 3
--------------------------------------	-----------	------------------	-------------------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **396 kg or 875 lbs.**  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI

SEE OWNER'S  
MANUAL FOR  
ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION  
VOIR LE MANUEL  
DE L'USAGER  
POUR PLUS DE  
RENSEIGNEMENTS

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label

## Load Carrying

is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label.

**Note:** *Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.*

### CALCULATING THE LOAD LIMIT

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

## Load Carrying

---

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

# Luggage Compartment

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the luggage compartment and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

**Note:** The frunk only operates when the vehicle is in park (P). If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument cluster.

**Note:** Do not hang any weight from the frunk. This could damage the frunk and its components. Remove any excessive weight from the frunk prior to use. If the frunk starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the frunk or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the frunk closes under control. If the frunk continues to close after opening, have the system checked.

**Note:** Do not leave the frunk open while driving. This could damage the frunk and its components.

## OPENING THE FRUNK

### OPENING THE FRUNK FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).

#### Using the Touchscreen

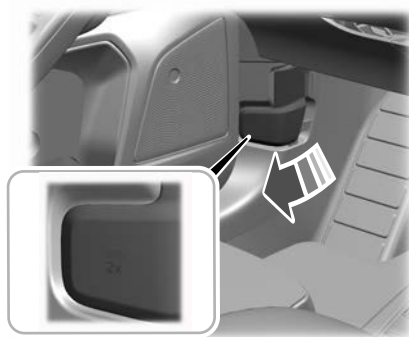
1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 379).

2.



Press the frunk icon.

### Manually Opening the Frunk



1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Pull the release lever to release the primary latch.
3. Pull the release lever a second time to release the frunk.
4. Lift the frunk. The struts support the frunk.

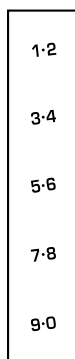
### OPENING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

**Note:** Be careful when opening the frunk in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the frunk.



# Luggage Compartment

## Using the Keyless Entry Keypad



Enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press **7-8** on the keypad within five seconds.

## Using Phone as a Key

Press the button to open the frunk.

**Note:** Make sure the authorized phone is within 1 m (3 ft) of the vehicle.

## CLOSING THE FRUNK

### CLOSING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

#### Manually Closing the Frunk



**WARNING:** Do not allow people or pets to climb inside the luggage compartment, and do not shut the luggage compartment with a person or pet inside. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Lower the frunk and apply light pressure as it drops.

**Note:** Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a frunk ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the frunk open while driving.

## USING THE FRUNK EMERGENCY RELEASE



If you are stuck inside the frunk, press the interior release button to open it. The material around the switch glows after a brief exposure to ambient light.

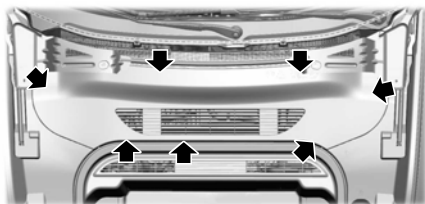
## INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

Remove the front luggage compartment covers in the following order:

# Luggage Compartment

1. Rear cover.
2. Left-hand side cover.
3. Right-hand side cover.

## Removing the Rear Cover



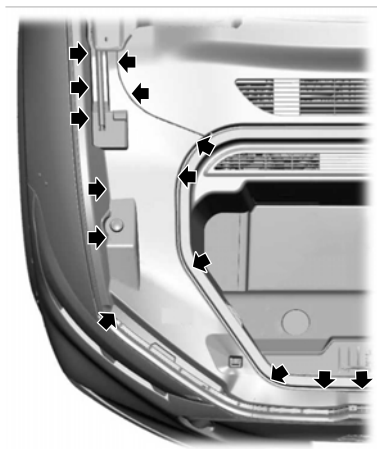
1. Start at the rear edge of the left-hand side.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## Removing the Left-Hand Side Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the left-hand side and work toward the front of the cover.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

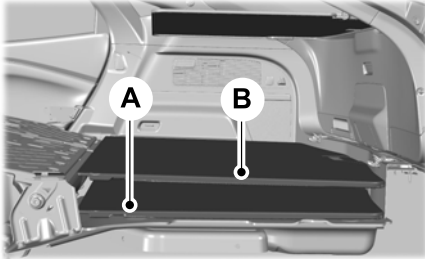
## Removing the Right-Hand Side Cover



1. Start at the rear edge of the right-hand side and work toward the front of the cover.
2. Pull upward at the clip locations shown to release the clips.
3. Carefully remove the cover.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Luggage Compartment

## ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LOAD FLOOR



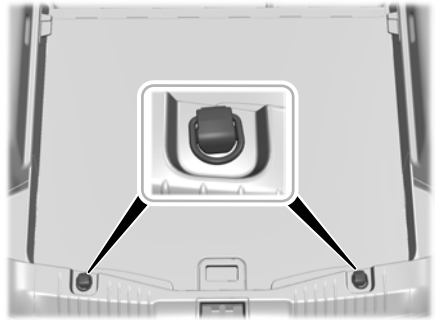
A Low load floor position.

B High load floor position.

The load floor can be adjusted to a higher position to provide a flat load area when the rear seats are folded.

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

### LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



The anchor points for the rear luggage compartment are located behind the rear seats.

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the vehicle is on and the trunk is not completely closed.

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT VIDEOS

[\*Discovering Mustang Mach-E Cargo Spaces Video Link\*](#)

# Towing a Trailer

---

## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

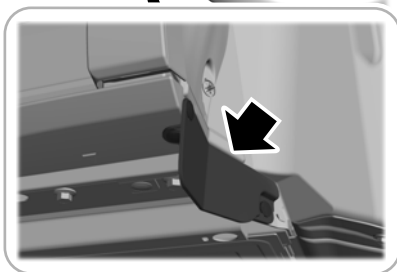
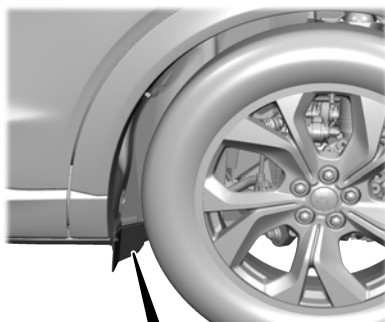


**WARNING:** Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

## Driving Hints

### PERFORMANCE VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - GT

- Verify correct tire pressures.
- Inspect wheels and tires for wear and damage. Replace any damaged wheels or tires.
- Do not operate your vehicle at high speeds with more than two passengers or while carrying cargo.
- It is recommended to cross speed bumps or driveway inclines slowly and at a 45° angle to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.
- Do not drive through car washes with the vehicle heavily loaded with passengers or luggage.
- Use only commercial car washes without mechanical tracks or hand wash to avoid potential damage.
- Put your vehicle in stay in neutral mode when entering an automatic car wash.



### PERFORMANCE VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: MUSTANG MACH-E RALLY

Follow these recommendations prior to driving your vehicle on unsurfaced roads or trails made from dirt and gravel.

- A protective shield can be purchased to protect the high-voltage battery from gravel spray while rally crossing. Visit the Ford Performance catalog for purchase details.
- Remove the rear tire spats from the vehicle when rally crossing.

### DRIVING IN COLD WEATHER

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

#### Driving on Snow and Ice



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the

## Driving Hints

chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 182).

In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.

Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

## DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

### Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 287).

## DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



**WARNING:** Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

# Driving Hints

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle rollover. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

## DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Steadily drive through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator pedal in each gear.*

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Moderately press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

# Driving Hints

## ELECTRIC VEHICLE

### MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

#### Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

#### Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle by using the departure and comfort settings to warm or cool the cabin and the high voltage battery when you have your vehicle plugged in. By using energy from the charging source prior to your departure, the system can manage the battery temperature for the best driving performance and use less energy for heating or cooling the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. See **Charging Settings** (page 170).

**Note:** You can also access departure and comfort settings using the FordPass app.

**Note:** Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.

#### Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This helps to moderate temperatures which affect the performance of the high voltage battery and requires energy to heat or cool the cabin.

## Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. Use the trip application on your touchscreen to see your driving scores. See **Trip Data** (page 115).

## FLOOR MATS



**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



## Driving Hints

---



**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period supplied with your vehicle.

Knowing your vehicle's VIN, mileage and your specific location gets help to you faster.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare — except for vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit.
- 12 V battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- In the event your vehicle's high-voltage battery does not have enough power to move, you can choose where you would like your vehicle towed (within a 80 km (50 mi) radius):
  - EV Certified Ford or Lincoln Dealer.
  - Nearest public charger.
  - Your home residence.
- Winch out — available within 30 m (100 ft) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.

- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 80 km (50 mi) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 80 km (50 mi) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 80 km (50 mi). Warranty towing, non-warranty towing and collision towing are available.
- Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance on your own, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 80 km (50 mi). To obtain reimbursement information, United States vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

## Crash and Breakdown Information

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle. Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. For complete details, see your Warranty Guide at [www.ford.com/support/warranty/](http://www.ford.com/support/warranty/).

Download the Sykes4Ford Roadside Assistance App for access to your roadside assistance services. For more information, scan here:



If you require more information, please call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

Ford Motor Company reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits.

For further details, call  
**1-800-665-2006** (Canada)  
**1-800-241-3673** (United States)

### HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

**In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:**

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

### Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

#### If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

#### Always:

# Crash and Breakdown Information

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

## Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. Never attempt to extinguish an electric vehicle fire or move a vehicle that is on fire.
4. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

## Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flashers operate with the power on or off. The battery loses charge and may have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The hazard flasher button is on the center console. Press the button to switch on the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear turn signals flash.

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** This procedure is only for the 12 volt under hood battery.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is easily accessible under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

**Note:** Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

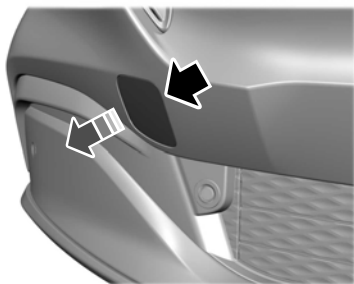
# Crash and Breakdown Information

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

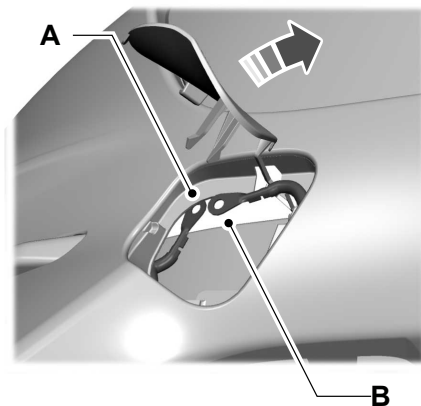
### Opening the Front Luggage Compartment With No Vehicle Power

If the vehicle has no power, you will be unable to open the front luggage compartment. To open the front luggage compartment follow the steps below:

1. Use an external power supply such as a 12 volt jump box.



2. Remove the cover at the front of your vehicle below the headlight. Press firmly on the top right of the covers edge, then pull the raised section on the bottom left toward you.



3. Pull both wires out of the opening to reveal both terminals.
4. Connect the external power supply to the terminals

**Note:** Be sure to match the red positive cable (A) to the red positive terminal and the black negative cable (B) to the black negative terminal.

5. Turn on the external power supply.

**Note:** Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for external power supply use.

**Note:** If performed correctly, the front luggage compartment latches immediately release, and you have access to the front luggage compartment.

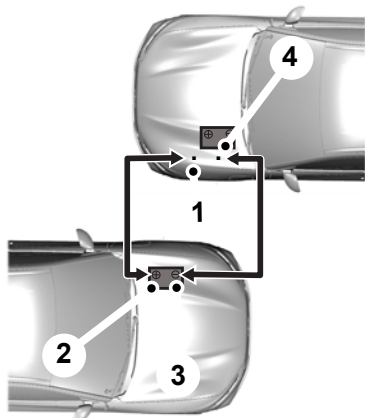
6. Disconnect the external power supply when it is no longer required.
7. To reinstall the cover, reverse the removal procedure.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

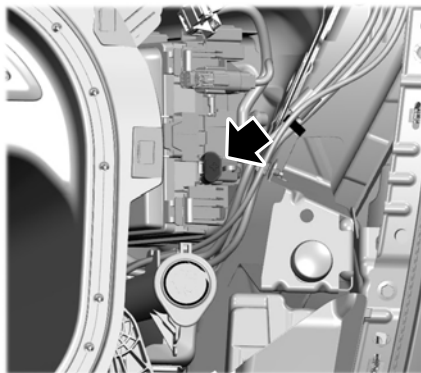
## To Connect the Booster Cables

**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

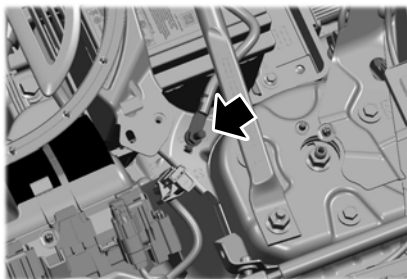
To access the booster cable connection points, remove the rear and left side front luggage compartment covers. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 281).



**Note:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts.



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jump point of the discharged battery vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) ground point of the discharged battery vehicle.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

5. Unlock the driver door. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 68).

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### To Start Your Vehicle

1. Run the engine of the booster vehicle at a moderately high speed.
2. Move the transmission selector lever of the low charge vehicle to park (P).
3. Switch on the ready to drive mode. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 147).
4. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could damage the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

### SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

**Note:** The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

## POST-COLLISION BRAKING

### How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

### Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

### Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

### Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The system deactivates the high voltage system in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

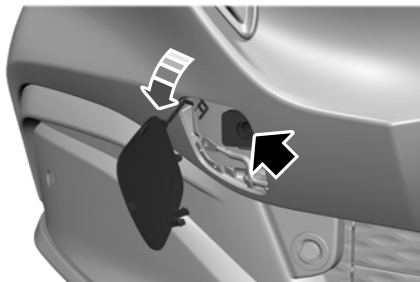
### RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch your vehicle off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



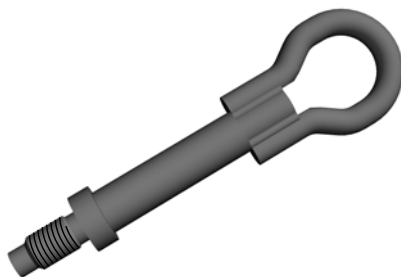
The front towing point is on the right-hand side of the front bumper. To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.

2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

**Note:** The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

### LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the spare wheel storage tray.

### INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



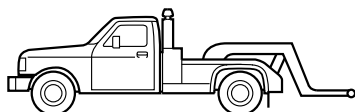
**WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Insert the towing eye into the towing point and turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that you fully tighten the recovery hook.



# Crash and Breakdown Information

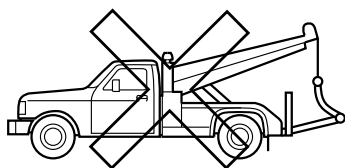
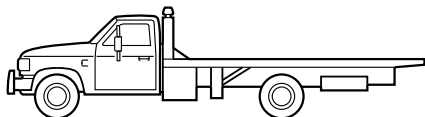
## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

**Note:** Do not use the battery protection rails for winching your vehicle. This can damage the battery protection rails.



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

# Towing Your Vehicle

---

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

**Note:** If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or electric drive motor damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch Emergency Tow on.
- Maximum speed is 55 km/h (35 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

### Switching Emergency Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on to accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 147).

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 379).
5. Press and hold Emergency Tow until a confirmation message appears on the touchscreen.
6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Release the parking brake.
9. Switch your vehicle off.

### Switching Emergency Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P). A message displays in the instrument cluster display and park (P) displays in the instrument cluster display and on the shifter.

# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



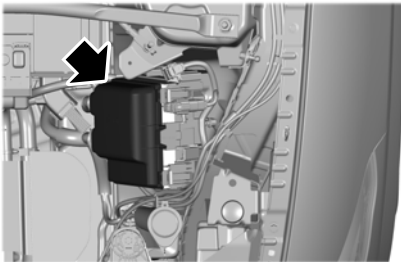
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



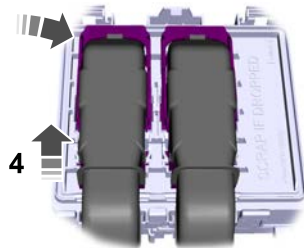
### ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 281).

2. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.

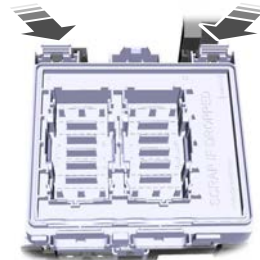


3



4

3. Pull the connector lever upward.
4. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

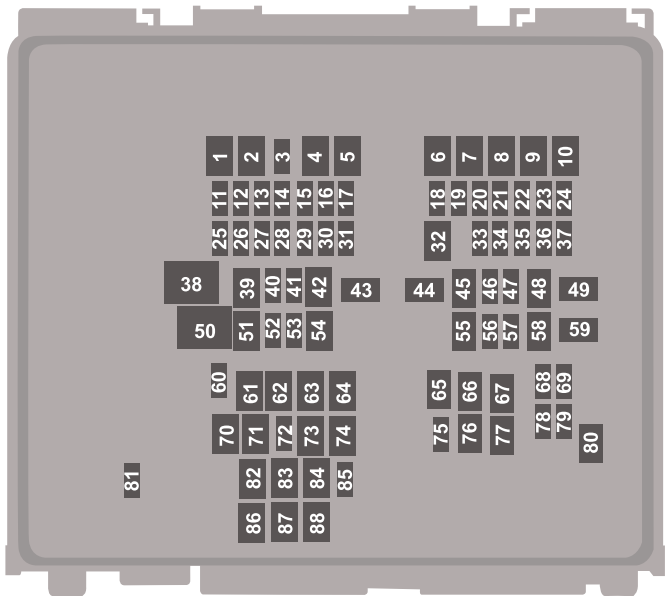


5. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.

# Fuses

6. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	40 A	Not used (spare).
3	15 A	Not used (spare).
4	40 A	Not used (spare).
5	—	Not used.
6	25 A	Transmission oil pump.
7	—	Not used.
8	—	Not used.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
9	—	Not used.
10	—	Not used.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Heat pump.
13	15 A	Active grille shutter. A/C compressor. Auxiliary PTC heater.
14	15 A	Bulkhead connector secondary drive unit (GT).
15	5 A	Battery electronic control module.
16	10 A	Battery charge control module.
17	—	Not used.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Brake system control module.
20	5 A	Charge port status indicator.
21	5 A	Frunk actuator relay coil.
22	20 A	Not used (spare).
23	20 A	Rear driver side electronic door.
24	—	Not used.
25	25 A	Right-hand enhanced head- lamps.
26	10 A	Headlamp control module.
27	5 A	Keep alive power.
28	5 A	Frunk actuator relay coil.
29	5 A	DC/DC converter.
30	—	Not used.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system.
34	—	Not used.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Primary hybrid powertrain control module. Auxiliary power distribution box. Secondary hybrid powertrain control module.
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Not used.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	40 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
44	60 A	Auxiliary power distribution box.
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	—	Not used.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	—	Not used.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
52	5 A	USB charge - rear console.
53	10 A	Center console USB.
54	30 A	Heated vent seats.
55	30 A	Heated seats.
56	20 A	Frunk module.
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	—	Not used.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	—	Not used.
61	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	30 A	Power liftgate.
65	30 A	Vehicle dynamics module.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	20 A	Front driver side electronic door.
69	20 A	Rear passenger side electronic door.
70	—	Not used.
71	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	—	Not used.
76	30 A	Heated rear window.
77	—	Not used.

## Fuses

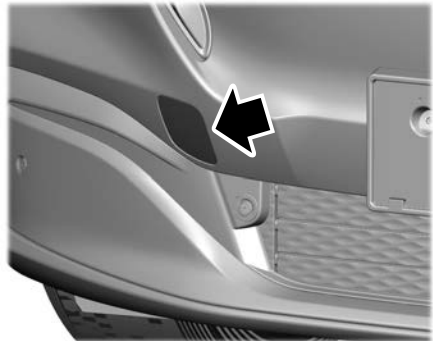
Item	Rating	Protected Component
78	25 A	Left-hand enhanced headlamps.
79	20 A	Front passenger side electronic door.
80	—	Not used.
81	10 A	Rear window washer pump.
82	—	Not used.
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Not used (spare).
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

### BATTERY FUSE BOX

#### LOCATING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



#### ACCESSING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX

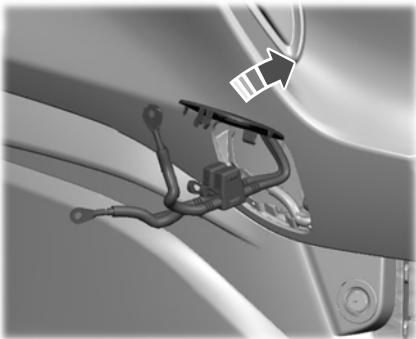


1. Press the top right-hand side of the cover, then pull the raised section on the bottom left-hand side toward you.

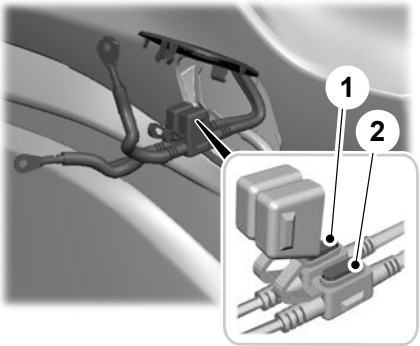


# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



2. Pull both wires out of the opening to reveal the inline fuses.



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	20 A	Frunk.
2	20 A	Frunk.

## BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

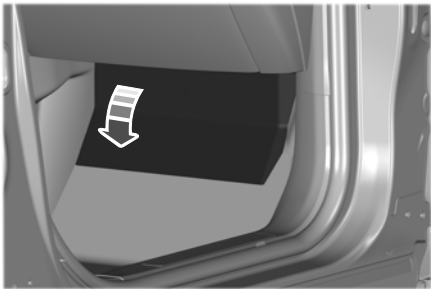
### LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

3. Remove the caps that cover the inline fuses.

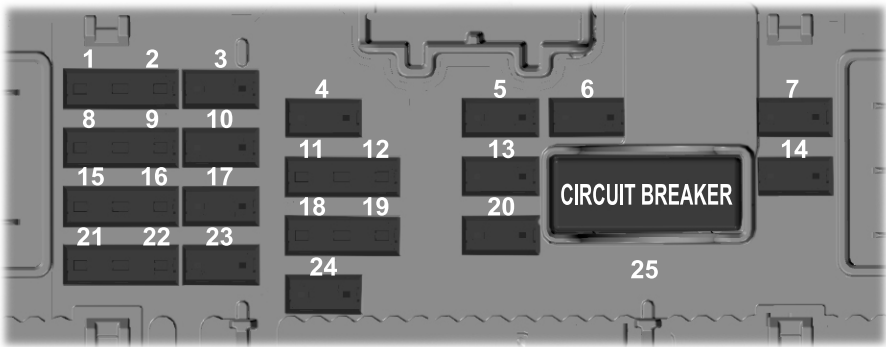


# Fuses

## ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



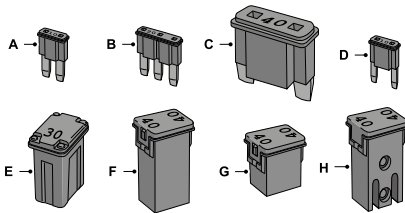
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Not used.
2	5 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Extended power module.
4	10 A	Multi-function display.
5	20 A	Not used.
6	10 A	Not used.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Auto-dimming exterior mirror.
10	10 A	Extended power module.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Telematics control unit module.
12	5 A	Anti-theft alarm. Keyless keypad switch. Front driver door activation switch.
13	15 A	Not used.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Not used.
16	15 A	Active suspension (GT).
17	15 A	SYNC.
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module. Driver status monitor.
19	7.5 A	Headlamp switch pack. Bluetooth low energy module. Push button start.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Gateway module. Climate control.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used.
25	30 A Circuit Breaker	Not used.

# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

#### When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

#### How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

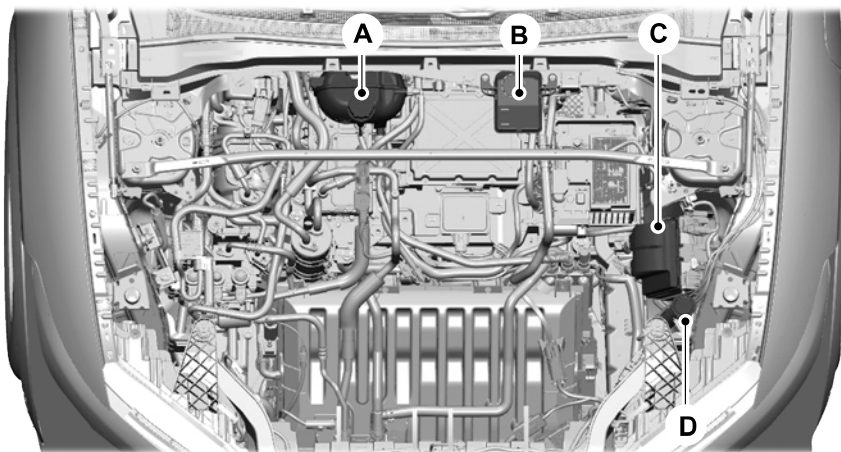
If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

See **Opening the Frunk from Inside Your Vehicle** (page 280).

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 310).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 182).
- C Under hood fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 299).
- D Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 94).

# Maintenance

**Note:** Some of these components are underneath the luggage compartment cover and cannot be seen unless you remove the cover. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 281).

## COOLANT

### CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Your vehicle has combined cooling loops for the battery and motor. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 309). Remove the luggage compartment cover to access the reservoir. See **Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover** (page 281).

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 403).

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34--37°C (-29--35°F). Check the coolant concentration using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

### ADDING COOLANT



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 312).

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may cause damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the electric motor cooling or heating systems.

**Note:** If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled or deionized water. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 312). Using water that has not been deionized could contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

**Note:** Coolants marketed for all makes and models might not meet our specifications and could cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage could void the vehicle warranty.

# Maintenance

---

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 312).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, have qualified personnel do the following as soon as possible:

1. Drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with coolant.

Water alone, without coolant, can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.

- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant, as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection.
- Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage to the electric motor.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause damage to the electric motor.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced range.

## Single Cooling Loop

Variant	Quantity
Standard Range Rear-Wheel drive.	13.1 L (13.84 qt)
Extended Range Rear-Wheel drive.	12 L (12.68 qt)
Standard Range All-Wheel drive.	14 L (14.79 qt)
Extended Range All-Wheel drive.	12.8 L (13.53 qt)
GT All-Wheel drive.	14.2 L (15.00 qt)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

## 12V BATTERY

### CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.



# Maintenance

## CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 150).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

## 12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### 12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## 12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
12V Battery Fault Service Soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric Range Reduced due to Park/Hazard Lamps On While Vehicle Off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical System Drain Service Required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

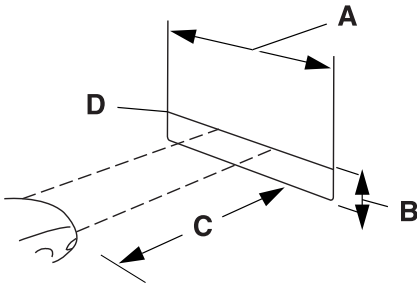
## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked by an authorized dealer.

# Maintenance

## Headlamp Aiming Target



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters).
- B Center height of lamp to ground (measurement B is relative to vehicle height).
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters).
- D Horizontal reference line.



6. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

## Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground.

**Note:** There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp low beam light.

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m (8 ft) long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



# Maintenance

---

7. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a Phillips #2 screwdriver to turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
8. Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.
9. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## EXTERIOR BULBS

### EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## INTERIOR BULBS

### INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

# Vehicle Specifications

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
12 volt battery. <sup>1</sup>	See note below. <sup>2</sup>
Cabin air filter.	FP-100-A
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2432-A (driver side) WW-2052-A (passenger side) WW-1207-A (rear window)

<sup>1</sup> Configure your vehicle's battery management system to match the replacement battery. Failure to use an appropriate configuration for your battery management system could result in shortened battery life, features not working correctly, or your vehicle not starting. Consult your local dealer or service provider for further details.

<sup>2</sup> See your dealer for the most current part number.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

# Vehicle Care

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

### Materials

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-F/M (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

**Note:** *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

## CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Rinse the area well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.

**Note:** Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

## CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.

# Vehicle Care

- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

**Note:** Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

### CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

### CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING FABRIC



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING VINYL



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.



# Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take the color code to an authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Make sure to read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Body Styling Kits

---

## **BODY STYLING KIT PRECAUTIONS**

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

# Storing Your Vehicle

## PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

### Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and doors closed for at least five minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.

### 12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

**Note:** It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.

### Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

**Note:** If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

### Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

## REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 4.5 m (15 ft) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the 12 volt battery, clean the 12 volt battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

## LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label or safety certification label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures. See **Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels** (page 276).

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires us to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory

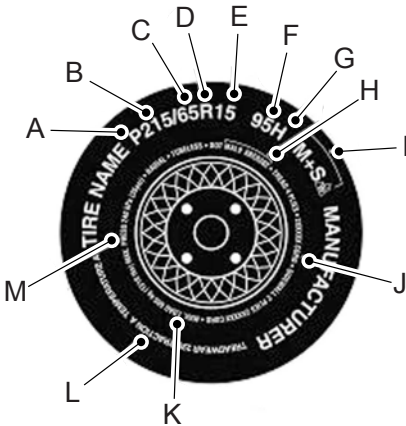
test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

# Wheel and Tire Information

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h (81 mph)
N	140 km/h (87 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are

the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

- I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or
- AT:** All Terrain, or
- AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**



## Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

### M. Maximum Inflation

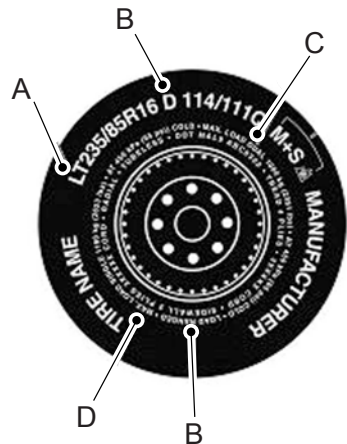
**Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge

that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

### Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

## Wheel and Tire Information

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

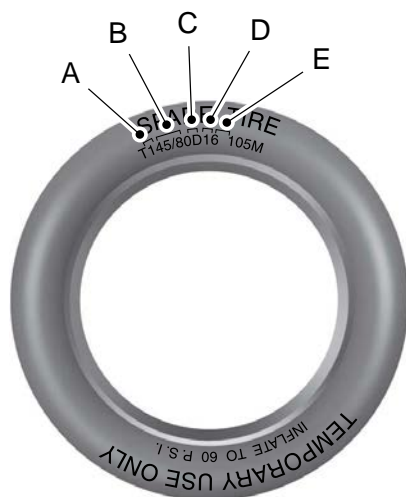
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

### Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

\* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

## Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**\*Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle comes with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can

affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

## Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when you replace the road tires on your vehicle.

It is recommended that you generally replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, we recommend you replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

### Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 7°C (45°F) or below, depending on tire wear and environmental conditions, or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7°C (19°F). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7°C (19°F). If the tires have been subjected to -7°C (19°F) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5°C (41°F) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

When using winter tires, install them on all wheels and inflate them to the recommended tire pressures listed on the tire label. See **Locating the Tire label** (page 325).



**WARNING:** Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation

## Wheel and Tire Information

pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

**Note:** *The suspension insulation and bumpers help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

**Note:** *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

**Note:** *Snow chains could damage aluminum wheels.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- On non-GT models, use ultra low profile snow chains or cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/60R18 or 225/55R19 all season tires.
- On GT models, use ultra low profile snow chains or cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/55R19 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 245/45R20.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet the same restrictions. Chains or cables of this size restriction include a tensioning device.

- Purchase snow chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Install snow chains or cables in pairs on the rear tires only.
- When driving with snow chains or cables do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain or cable manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Install snow chains or cables securely, verifying that the snow chains or cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains or cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains or cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains or cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains or cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, contact your authorized dealer.



# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 337).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

# Tire Care

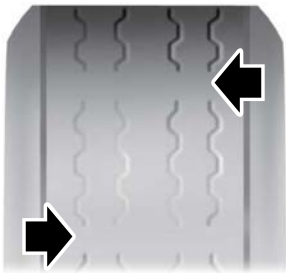
## Checking Pressure when tires are hot:

If pressures are checked after tires have been driven for more than three minutes or more than 1 mile, (2 km) the tires become hot and the pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi (27.6 kPa). Therefore when the tire pressure is adjusted under these conditions, it should be increased to a gauge reading of 4 psi (27.6 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure.

After inflating the tires while hot, make sure to recheck tire pressure later once the tires are cold.

New hot pressure	36 psi (250 kPa)
------------------	------------------

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR



## For Example Only

Gauge reading of hot tire	33 psi (230 kPa)
If recommended, cold inflation pressure is	32 psi (220 kPa)
The hot tire pressure is only 1 psi (10 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure. Therefore, add 3 psi (20 kPa) more to increase the hot pressure to 4 psi (30 kPa) over the recommended cold inflation pressure.	

When the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

# Tire Care

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

## Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 55 km/h (34 mph). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## HIGH SPEED DRIVING CAN BE DANGEROUS

Correct inflation pressure is especially important. However, at high speeds, even with the correct inflation pressure, a road hazard for example is more difficult to avoid and if contact is made, has a greater chance of causing tire damage than at a lower speed. Moreover, driving at high speed reduces the reaction time available to avoid accidents and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

If you see any damage to a tire or wheel, replace it with the spare at once and visit a participating Tire Retailer.

Exceeding the maximum speeds shown on the following page for each type of tire will cause the tire to build up excessive heat which can cause tire damage that could result in sudden tire destruction and rapid air loss. Failure to control a vehicle when one or more tires experience a sudden air loss can lead to an accident.

**In any case, you should not exceed reasonable speeds as indicated by the legal limits and driving conditions.**

## Tire Care

---

### **DO NOT OVERLOAD: DRIVING ON ANY OVERLOADED TIRE IS DANGEROUS**

The maximum load rating of your tires is molded on the tire sidewall. Do not exceed this rating. Follow the loading instructions of the manufacturer of your vehicle and this will ensure that your tires are not overloaded. Tires which are loaded beyond their maximum allowable loads for the particular application will build up excessive heat that may result in sudden tire destruction. Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating for any axle on your vehicle.

### **TIRE ALTERATIONS**

Do not make or allow to be made any alterations on your tires. Alterations may prevent proper performance, leading to tire damage which can result in an accident. Tires which become unserviceable due to alterations such as truing, whitewall inlays, addition of balancing or sealant liquids, or the use of tire dressing containing petroleum distillates are excluded from warranty coverage.

### **REPAIRS - WHEREVER POSSIBLE, SEE YOUR TIRE RETAILER AT ONCE**

If any tire sustains a puncture, have the tire demounted and thoroughly inspected by a tire retailer for possible damage that may have occurred. A tread area puncture in any passenger or light truck tire can be repaired provided that the puncture hole is not more than 1/4" in diameter, not more than one radial cable per casing ply is damaged, and the tire has not been damaged further by the puncturing object or by running underinflated. Tire punctures consistent with these guidelines should only be repaired by following the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA) recommended repair procedures. Plug-only repairs done on-the-wheel are considered improper and therefore, not recommended. Such repairs are not reliable and may cause further damage to the tire.

### **STORAGE**

Tires contain waxes and emollients to protect their outer surfaces from ozone and weather checking. As the tire rolls and flexes, the waxes and emollients continually migrate to the surface, replenishing this protection throughout the normal use of the tire. Consequently, when tires sit unused for long periods of time (a month or more) their surfaces

## Tire Care

---

become dry and more susceptible to ozone and weather checking and the casing becomes susceptible to flat spotting. **For this reason, tires should always be stored in a cool, dry, clean, indoor environment. If storage is for one month or more, eliminate the weight from the tires by raising the vehicle or by removing the tires from the vehicle. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.**

When tires are stored, be sure they are placed away from sources of heat and ozone such as direct sunlight, hot pipes and electric generators. Be sure that surfaces on which tires are stored are clean and free from grease, gasoline or other substances, which could deteriorate the rubber. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.

### **FOLLOW THESE MOUNTING RECOMMENDATIONS**

**Tire changing can be dangerous and must be done by professionally trained persons using proper tools and procedures as specified by the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA). Single or dual assemblies must be completely deflated before demounting.**

Your tires should be mounted on wheels of correct size and type and which are in good, clean condition. Wheels that are bent, chipped, rusted (steel wheels) or corroded (alloy wheels) may cause tire damage. The inside of the tire must be free from foreign material. Have your retailer check the wheels before mounting new tires. Mismatched tires and rims can explode during mounting. Also, mismatched tires and rims can result in dangerous tire failure on the road. If a tire is mounted by error on the wrong-sized rim, do not remount it on the proper rim - scrap it. It may have been damaged internally (which is not externally visible) by having been dangerously stretched and could fail on the highway.

# Tire Care

---

**Old valves may leak. When new tubeless tires are mounted, have new valves of the correct type installed. Tubeless tires must only be mounted on wheels designed for tubeless tires i.e., wheels which have safety humps or ledges.**

It is recommended that you have your tires and wheels balanced. Tires and wheels, which are not balanced, may cause steering difficulties, a bumpy ride, and irregular tire wear.

**Be sure that all your valves have suitable valve caps. The valve cap is the primary seal against air loss.**

## TEMPORARY SPARE TIRES

When using any temporary spare tire, be sure to follow the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

**REMEMBER... TO AVOID DAMAGE TO YOUR TIRES AND POSSIBLE ACCIDENT:**

- CHECK TIRE PRESSURE AT LEAST ONCE EACH MONTH WHEN TIRES ARE COLD AND BEFORE LONG TRIPS.
- DO NOT UNDERINFLATE/OVERINFLATE.
- DO NOT OVERLOAD.
- DRIVE AT MODERATE SPEEDS, OBSERVE LEGAL LIMITS.

- AVOID DRIVING OVER POTHOLES, OBSTACLES, CURBS OR EDGES OF PAVEMENT.
- AVOID EXCESSIVE WHEEL SPINNING.
- IF YOU SEE ANY DAMAGE TO A TIRE, REPLACE WITH THE SPARE AND VISIT ANY AUTHORIZED RETAILER AT ONCE.
- IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS, CONTACT YOUR AUTHORIZED RETAILER.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

# Tire Care

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

## INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always

perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

**Note:** *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

**Note:** *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

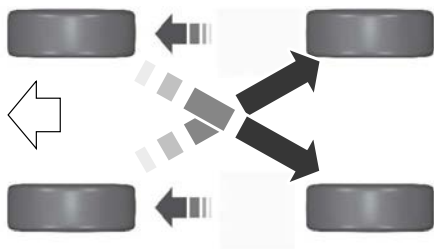
**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

## Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.

## Tire Care

---





# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

**Note:** *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

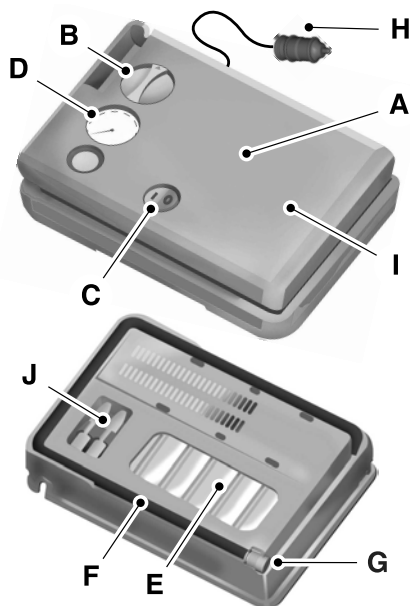
## LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is located under the load floor in the rear of the vehicle.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

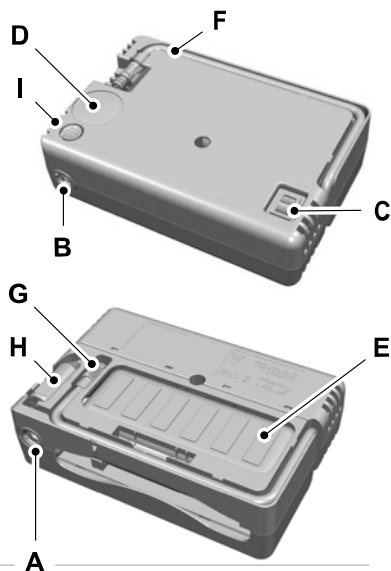
## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS

### Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 1



- A Air compressor (inside)
- B Selector switch
- C On and Off button
- D Air pressure gauge
- E Sealant bottle and canister
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
- G Tire valve connector
- H Accessory power plug
- I Casing/housing
- J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters

### Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 2



- A Air compressor (inside)
- B Air Hose port (1 of 2)
- C On and Off button
- D Air pressure gauge
- E Sealant bottle and canister
- F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
- G Tire valve connector
- H Accessory power plug
- I Casing/housing

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

### Tips for use of the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 1

To make sure the kit operates safely and properly, observe the following:

- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This prevents the compressor from overheating.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C (-22°F) and 70°C (158°F).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.

**Note:** Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.



When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.

### What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, the tire is reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

### First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with sealing compound and air



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

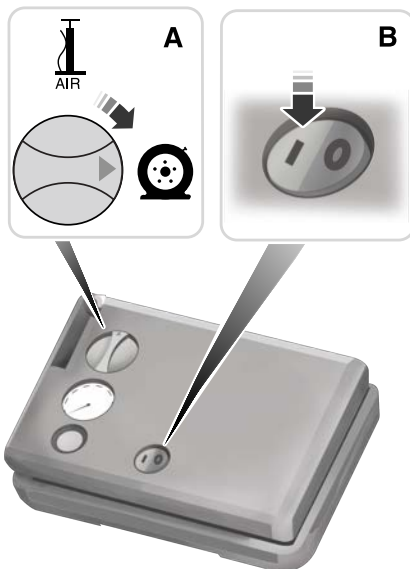
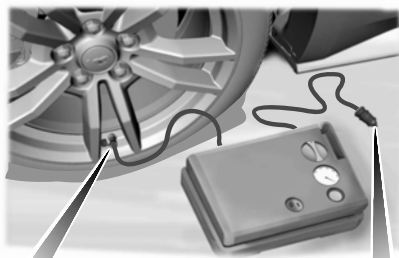
Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and power off the vehicle. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

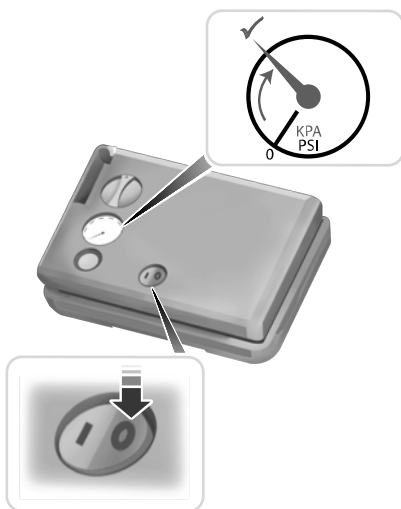
1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.
3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
6. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Turn the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).
7. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver door or the door jamb area. Check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



8. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.
9. Drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to evenly distribute the sealant inside the tire.

**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

## Second Stage: Checking the tire pressure with the inflator kit



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

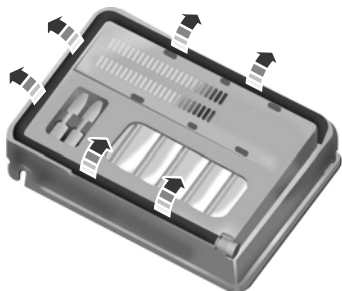
1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Attach the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.
5. Remove the hoses, re-install the tire valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

## What to do after the tire has been sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister. Sealant canisters and spare parts can be obtained at an authorized dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



2. Unwrap the power cord.



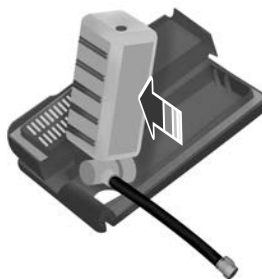
3. Remove the back cover.



4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

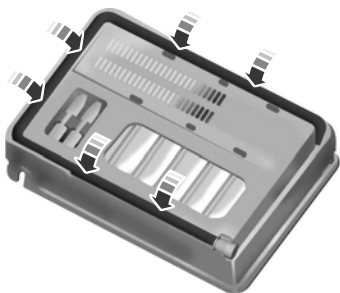
## Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



3. Snap the back cover back into place.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug.

## Tips for use of the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Solution 2

To make sure the kit operates safely and properly, observe the following:

- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.

- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This prevents the compressor from overheating.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and  $70^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $158^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.

**Note:** Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.



The tire sealant and inflator kit can be for regular tire pressure maintenance and inflating other objects by plugging the air supply hose into the port identified by a tire pump icon as indicated by the gray portion of the instruction label.

## What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the kit:

- In the first stage, the tire is reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

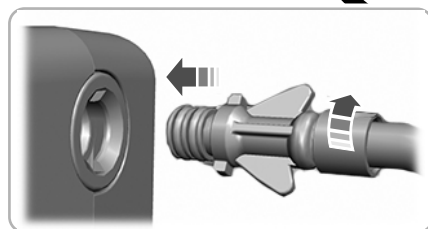
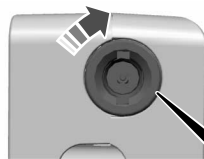
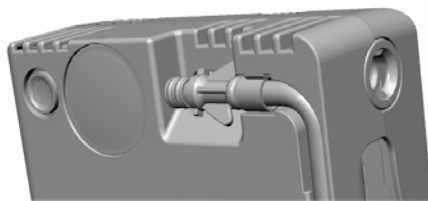
## First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with sealing compound and air



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and power off the vehicle. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. The dual-purpose hose (black tube) for air and sealant is pressed into a groove on the compressor housing. Remove the dual-purpose hose from the compressor housing.
2. Insert the air supply hose into the port as identified by the punctured tire icon and indicated by the blue portion of the instruction label for temporary repair of a tire puncture.

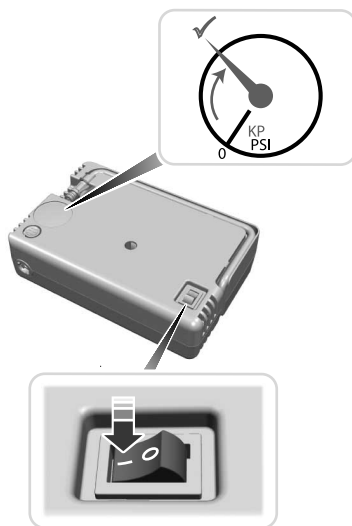
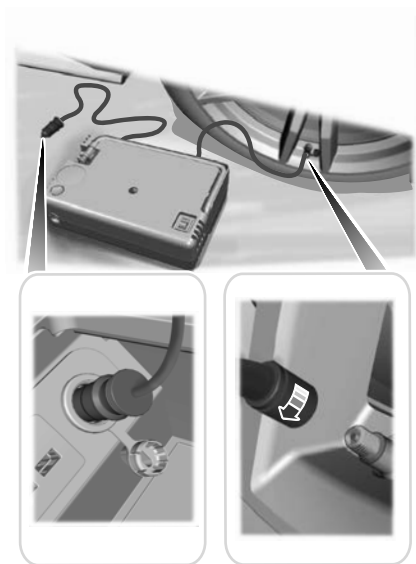
**Note:** Note the winged twist connector on the instruction label side of the housing.

3. Follow the arrow on the blue, puncture repair portion of the label to find the port for the winged twist connector on the side of the compressor housing. It is labeled "A" with a printed icon of a punctured tire.

4. Insert the connector and twist it clockwise until the connector wing aligns with the marking on the compressor housing and it is locked in position.
5. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

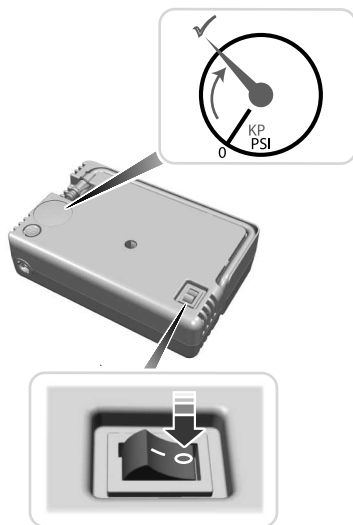


## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



6. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the threaded connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.
7. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.
8. Turn the tire inflator kit on by pressing the on/off button.
9. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver door or the door jamb area. Check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

## Second Stage: Checking the tire pressure with the inflator kit

**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



10. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.
11. Remove the red warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.
12. Drive the vehicle 6 km (4 mi) to evenly distribute the sealant inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
13. After 6 km (4 mi), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Attach the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

## Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

5. Remove the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

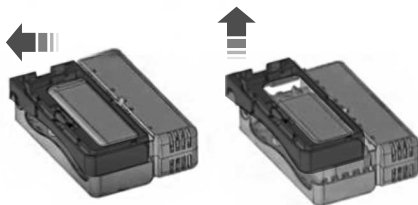
### What to do after the tire has been sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister. Sealant canisters and spare parts can be obtained at an authorized dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

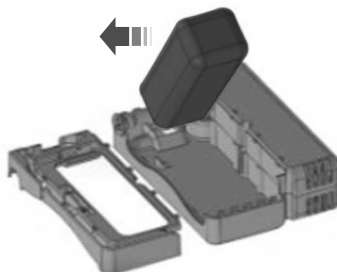
### Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing and discard.
2. Unwrap the power cord.



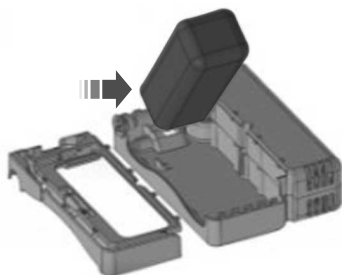
3. Unlatch the sealant bottle cover by sliding it outward, then lift and remove the cover.



4. Rotate the sealant canister up 60 degrees and slide it outward from the case/housing to remove.

# Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

## Installation of the sealant canister to the kit



1. With the canister held at an angle to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.
2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/case.
3. Slide the back cover over the cannister until it snaps back into place.
4. Wrap the new dual-purpose hose (black tube) into the channel around the housing/case.
5. Stow the power cord in the side compartment of the housing and stow the accessory power cord into its storage slot on the back cover.

**Note:** *If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, contact your authorized dealer for assistance. Make sure the sealant compound use by date is on the sealant canister label and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. Replace the sealant canister after four years of non-use.*

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

**Note:** *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

**Note:** *After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning indicator to turn off.*

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, firmly hold the steering wheel and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle does not include a spare wheel and tire, or a vehicle jack.

Have the flat serviced by as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview** (page 357). During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the tire pressure monitoring system sensor inspected for damage as soon as possible.

**Note:** Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may damage the tire pressure monitoring system sensor. If you must use a sealant, use the Tire Mobility Kit sealant included with your vehicle. Replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel as soon as possible after use of the sealant.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system indicator illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

## Jacking Positions



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



**WARNING:** Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



**WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

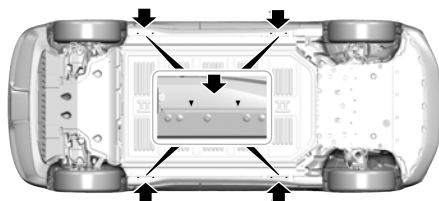
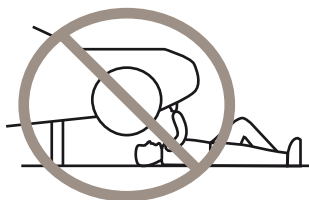


**WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

# Changing a Road Wheel

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.



4. Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

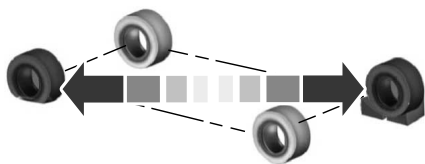
**Note:** Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.

**Note:** Do not lift the vehicle on the strike strip or beyond the strike strips. These are the lowest point beyond the vehicle sills.

## WHEEL NUTS

**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the selector lever in park (P) and power the vehicle off.



3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

# Changing a Road Wheel

Bolt Size	Nm ( lb.ft) <sup>1</sup>
M14 x 1.5	204 Nm (150 lb.ft)

<sup>1</sup> Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 160 km (100 mi) after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



A     Hub pilot bore.

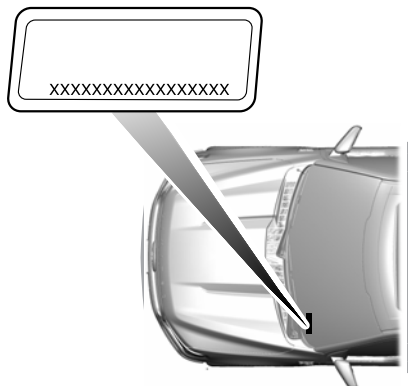
Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

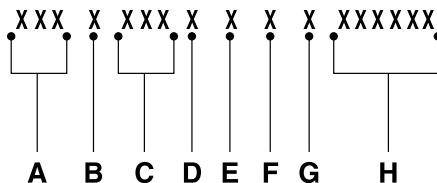
The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



**Note:** In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.
- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.

## INSTALLING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION CARD

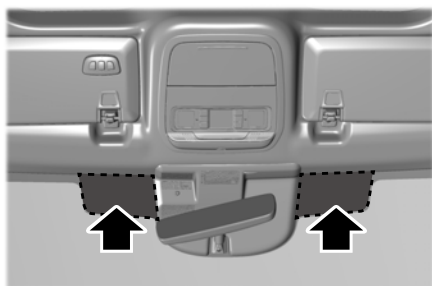
Install any devices that use radio frequency identification, for example, toll readers or vehicle identification cards, to the specified area on the windshield.

**Note:** Follow the vehicle identification card provider's installation instructions.

**Note:** When installing the radio frequency identification device, do not block objects such as the rain sensor and the auto-dimming sensor.

## Vehicle Identification

---



1. Place the device on the windshield, within one of the shaded areas at either side of the mirror.

**Note:** *The device must be placed in the defined areas shown. The remainder of the windshield has a coating that prevents the device from working properly.*

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford mobile app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

## CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

**Note:** Some connected vehicle services are subscription-based and may require activation through your vehicle's mobile app. Go to the mobile app for more information.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Wi-Fi.
3. Switch Wi-Fi on.
4. Press View Available Networks.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

# Connected Vehicle

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

**Note:** Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is my Ford mobile app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

#### Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

#### Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

## Connected Vehicle

---

### **What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?**

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

### **Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?**

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

### **Why do software downloads take too long?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

### **Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?**

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.



# Vehicle Hotspot

---

With a data plan, your hotspot can provide devices in and around your vehicle with Wi-Fi data.

**Note:** *A mobile device is required to complete hotspot setup.*

## Setting Up the Vehicle Hotspot

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Vehicle Hotspot.
3. Scan the code on the touchscreen with your device or follow the text instructions on the touchscreen.
4. Follow the instructions on your device to purchase a plan or start a trial.

If you are not given an option to purchase a plan or start a trial, log into your vehicle's mobile app to access Connected Services.

Through the Connected Services portal, you can manage your account settings such as renewing your plan.

**Note:** *Hotspot services are subject to coverage and availability.*

## Using the Vehicle Hotspot

Use your device to select the hotspot from the list of Wi-Fi networks.

If the vehicle hotspot name does not show up in the list of available Wi-Fi networks on your device:

- Make sure hotspot visibility is switched on.
- The hotspot is transmitting at a frequency the device can see.

**Note:** *You cannot connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

## Vehicle Hotspot Settings

The hotspot information can only be updated once you activate the hotspot.

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Vehicle Hotspot.
3. Press Settings.

You can adjust the following in the vehicle hotspot setting menu:

- Vehicle hotspot name or password.
- Vehicle hotspot frequency.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press your preferred audio source.

**Note:** Available audio sources are listed along the top of the radio screen.

## MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

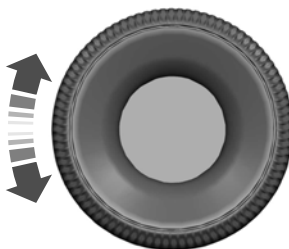
**Note:** Not all sources have shuffle mode.



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

**Note:** Not all sources have repeat mode.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

You can also press the mute button on the map screen.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

# Audio System

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.*

**Note:** *You can save presets from multiple sources to the memory preset bar.*

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

To access the sound settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Sound. See **Center Display** (page 379).

From the menu, you can adjust the following:

- Tone settings.
- Balance and fade.
- Speed compensated volume.
- Volume settings.
- Sound mode/Occupancy mode

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options, not all settings are available.*

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Scroll to Clock.
3. Set the time.

**Note:** *The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.*

## Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Scroll to Clock.
3. Switch Auto Time Update on or off.

## AM/FM RADIO

### AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

### SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

#### Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

# Audio System

## Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

## Using the Station List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

## DIGITAL RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS DIGITAL RADIO

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.

For additional information, visit [www.HDRadio.com](http://www.HDRadio.com).

HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of XPERI. The vehicle manufacturer and XPERI are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

### HOW DOES DIGITAL RADIO WORK

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts.

HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.

**Note:** When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.

**Note:** There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.

## DIGITAL RADIO LIMITATIONS

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.

If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.

**Note:** If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.

Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.

You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

## SWITCHING DIGITAL RADIO RECEPTION ON AND OFF

- 1.



From the audio screen, press the button.

# Audio System

2. Switch HD Radio on or off.

## DIGITAL RADIO INDICATORS

### HD Radio Indicator

The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.

Orange indicates digital audio is playing.

### Multicast Indicator

The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.

**Note:** For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.

## SATELLITE RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS SATELLITE RADIO

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit [www.SiriusXM.com](http://www.SiriusXM.com) in the United States, [www.SiriusXM.ca](http://www.SiriusXM.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.

### SATELLITE RADIO LIMITATIONS

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance. Factory-installed and aftermarket vehicle structures including, but not limited to, roof racks and soft top roofs in a partially open position could reduce reception performance.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

# Audio System

When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

## LOCATING THE SATELLITE RADIO IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

## SELECTING A CHANNEL

### Manually Selecting a Channel



Press the button to find the previous or next available radio channel.



### Linear Tuner

The linear tuner is displayed when manually selecting a channel. You can swipe left or right on the linear tuner carousel to navigate through the channel list. Tap on a channel title to listen to it.

### Using Direct Tune

1. Press the channel up or down button to open the linear tuner screen.
2. Press **Direct Tune** to open the number pad.
3. Enter the channel you prefer.

### Using Browse

1. Press **Browse**.
2. Select a channel.

## SATELLITE RADIO SETTINGS

### Subscription

Your subscription status is displayed. You can subscribe or manage your subscription directly from the touchscreen.

### SiriusXM Favorites

While you are listening to SiriusXM, you can save favorites by:

- Tapping the currently tuned channel or show logo on the SiriusXM audio screen.
- Tuning to a channel or show you want to save as a favorite. Navigate to the SiriusXM Favorites screen and press the Add Current button. The currently tuned channel or show is saved as a favorite.
- Saving a radio preset. This saves the currently tuned SiriusXM channel or show as a favorite

**Note:** Requires a trial or active subscription to use.

### Listening History

Listening history is a list of recently listened to SiriusXM content. You can view, manage and reset the listening history using the controls on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Requires a trial or active subscription to use.

### Help and Support

You can contact SiriusXM Customer Care directly from the operating system and view information required to manage your SiriusXM account.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUDIO SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

#### Satellite Radio Troubleshooting

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Connectivity Disabled	Internet streaming and On Demand shows are unavailable and some SiriusXM features are disabled.	Internet connectivity is turned off. See <b>Connected Vehicle</b> (page 366).
No Internet	Audio system may mute. Switch to Satellite button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via satellite.	SYNC attempts to connect. See <b>Satellite Radio Limitations</b> (page 373). Switch to a satellite connection for the current channel if the option is available.
No Satellite Signal	Audio system may mute. Switch to Internet button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via streaming.	Antenna may be obstructed or satellite reception is weak in your location. See <b>Satellite Radio Limitations</b> (page 373). Switch to an internet connection for the current channel if the option is available.
Slow Network Connection	Audio system may mute while the audio attempts to load.	Allow some time for the audio to load or tune to a different channel.
Channel Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to tune to the channel. If the issue continues, the channel may no longer be available.
Episode Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to play the episode. If the issue continues, the episode may no longer be available.

# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Something went wrong	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	Allow some time and retry the action.
Subscribe to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	<p>Your subscription has expired or you have not yet subscribed for access to the listed content. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit <a href="http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh">www.siriusxm.com/refresh</a> in the US, or <a href="http://www.siriusxm.ca/refresh">www.siriusxm.ca/refresh</a> in Canada.</p> <p>You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See <b>Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number</b> (page 374).</p>



# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Upgrade to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription does not include access to the listed content. You may need to upgrade your subscription. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit <a href="http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh">www.siriusxm.com/refresh</a> in the US, or <a href="http://www.siriusxm.ca/refresh">www.siriusxm.ca/refresh</a> in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See <b>Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number</b> (page 374).
Location Restricted Content	Audio may mute. Not available in your location or Unable to determine your location may be displayed.	Content is not available in your location or SiriusXM is unable to determine your location. Tuning to a different channel may resolve the issue.
Channel Blocked	Audio may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	The Block Explicit Content filter is turned on. Navigate to Listener Settings under the Satellite Radio Settings menu to access the Block Explicit Content filter. Navigate to Listener Settings. See <b>Satellite Radio Settings</b> (page 374).
Antenna Problem or Hardware Problem	Audio may mute. Access to SiriusXM features may be unavailable.	If issue persists, you may need to visit an authorized dealer for service.

# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
SiriusXM Updating...	Audio may mute.	Allow SiriusXM some time to complete updating.
Loading...	Audio may mute. Content may be temporarily unavailable while loading.	No action necessary. If loading time is longer than usual, See <b>Satellite Radio Settings</b> (page 374).
SiriusXM Loading...	Audio may mute. Content and controls may be temporarily unavailable.	No action necessary. Allow SiriusXM some time to finish loading.

# Center Display

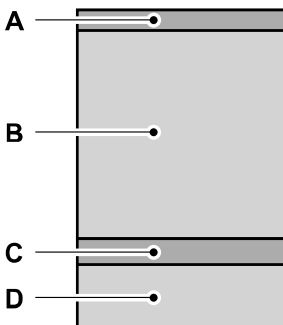
## CENTER DISPLAY OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

**Note:** Illustrations are provided for conceptual understanding only and may appear differently on your vehicle.



- A Status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 379).
- B Open app area.

- C App bar.
- D Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 117).

## STATUS BAR

The status bar appears at the top of the display. The following buttons and icons can appear in the status bar.

**Note:** Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

### App Launcher



Press to see a list of apps. To open an app, select the app.

### Settings



Press to open the settings menu. See **Settings** (page 380).

### Apple CarPlay and Android Auto



Press to open Apple CarPlay or Android Auto. See **Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off** (page 389). See **Switching Android Auto™ On and Off** (page 389).



### Alexa Built-In



Press to set up Alexa. See **Alexa Built-In** (page 384).

### Camera



Press to access the camera screen.

# Center Display

## Connected Device



Automatic crash notification system off.



Device signal strength.



Device signal roaming.



Device signal not available.

## Vehicle Data and Location



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

## Vehicle Signal



Vehicle signal strength.



Vehicle signal roaming.



Vehicle signal not available.



Wi-Fi connected.

## Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

**Note:** If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

## Wireless Charging



Wireless charging active.




Device connected and not charging.

## Personal Profiles



Press to change or add a profile. See **Personal Profiles** (page 392).

## SETTINGS

-  Press to open the settings menu.
- Select an item on the side menu to access specific settings. The main area changes as you select different side menu items.
- Press the icon again to close the list of settings.

You can change the display language and other measurement units under the General menu.

# Center Display



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it to expand the menu and see additional settings.



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

## Display Settings

From the display menu you can do the following:

- Switch the calm screen on.
- Manually adjust the screen brightness.
- Set the display mode for the instrument cluster and touchscreen.


## Touchscreen Brightness

To manually adjust the screen brightness, use the plus or minus buttons.

**Note:** *The display brightness is limited if the settings of the instrument panel lighting brightness are set to the highest or lowest setting.*

## DRIVER ASSISTANCE MENU

To access the driver assistance menu:

1.  Press to open the settings menu.

**Note:** *The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.*

2. Press Driver Assistance.

## REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

# Voice Interaction

## FORD ASSISTANT

### USING FORD ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

**Note:** You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 366).

### Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Voice Command Help.
3. Select a feature.

### FORD ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 379).

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.

- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

### FORD ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

#### Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example \*, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

## **Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?**

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example \*, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

## **Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?**

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

## **Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?**

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

# Alexa Built-In

## WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

## ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

**Note:** Support and functionality may vary based on the country in which your FordPass account is registered.

## SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Get Started.
3. Sign in to the Amazon account by either scanning the code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
4. Once logged in, follow the on-screen prompts.

5. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

## Signing Out of Your Account

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Sign Out.

## USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

## ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

### Enabling the Wake Word

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Switch Listen for Wake Word on or off.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

### Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:



## Alexa Built-In

---

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Contact List.
3. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

**Note:** *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

### Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Things to Try.

# Phone

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Connecting your phone stores contact and call data on your vehicle.

**Note:** *This data is used to provide intelligent suggestions. You can switch this off in the touchscreen settings menu. See **Selecting a Personal Profile** (page 393).*

**Note:** *Unpairing your phone removes the contact and call data from your vehicle and stops intelligent call suggestions.*

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 379).
3. Select Add Phone.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to pair your device.

## PHONE MENU



Press to view your favorite contacts.



Press to view your recent calls.



Press to view your contacts



Press to use the phone keypad.



Press to display recent text messages.



Press to view recent emails.

Press the down arrow to view additional items for a connected device.



Press to begin a voice interaction.



Press to switch to a different connected device.



Press to mute notifications.



Press to access phone settings.

# Phone

## MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

### Making Calls

**To call a number in your contacts, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your recent calls, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number from your favorites, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

**To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

### Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

**To accept the call, select:**

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

**To reject the call, select:**

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

### During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

# Phone

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

## SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

# Phone

## SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

## ENABLING APPS ON A MOBILE DEVICE

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## Enabling Apps on an iOS Device

1. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

**Note:** Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

**Note:** The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

## Enabling Apps on an Android Device

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.

**Note:** Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

**Note:** The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

## SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 379).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Apple CarPlay icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

## SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.

## Phone

---

2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 379).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Android Auto icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Add Phone.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

1. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

2. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 379).



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.

**Note:** If Bluetooth device was not the previous source.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

## Browsing your Media Library

When a compatible mobile device is connected to the vehicle, your media library is accessible through the touchscreen. From the touchscreen, you can browse through songs, albums, artists, and playlists on your mobile device.

**Note:** This feature is dependent on the connected mobile device and the media application used.

**Note:** Browse feature functionality may be limited while driving.

# Personal Profiles

---

## HOW DO PERSONAL PROFILES WORK

You can create multiple personal profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle settings such as seats and mirrors, as well as non-positional settings like radio, navigation and driver assist system settings. Positional settings are saved by holding a memory function button. Non-positional settings are saved when you change a setting while a profile is active.

## ENABLING OR DISABLING PERSONAL PROFILES

1. From the settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Switch Enable Profiles on or off.

**Note:** *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

When enabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device that is not linked to a driver profile does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile but is saved to a preset setting does not change active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

When disabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device does not recall any non-positional settings but still recalls positional settings from the driver profile which the remote control or mobile device is linked to.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is linked to a driver profile or has saved to a preset setting recalls non-positional settings from the guest profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

## CREATING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 379).
3. Press Add New.
4. Follow the instructions on the display.

**Note:** *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

## LINKING OR UNLINKING A PERSONAL PROFILE

You can link your profile to a remote control or mobile device so that your settings are activated when you use the remote control or mobile device to turn on the vehicle.



# Personal Profiles

---

## Remote Control

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls by assigning a remote control to a personal profile.

**Note:** *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

**Note:** *You cannot link a remote control to a guest profile.*

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Select the profile to link or unlink.
3. Select the remote control to link or unlink.
4. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *If more than one linked remote control is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

## Mobile Device

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 379).
  2. Select the profile to link or unlink.
- Note:** *You cannot link a mobile device to a guest profile.*
3. Select the mobile device to link or unlink.
  4. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

**Note:** *The mobile device must be in your vehicle and previously set up as a remote control for your vehicle.*

**Note:** *If more than one linked mobile device is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first mobile device to initiate a memory recall.*

## SELECTING A PERSONAL PROFILE

You can select a profile using the touchscreen or the preset button you selected when you created your profile.

If you use a linked device, such as a remote control or mobile device, the active profile is set to the linked profile.

To change the active profile:

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Select the profile to use.
3. Press Make Profile Active.

**Note:** *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

## DELETING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1. From settings menu, press Personal Profiles. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Select the profile to delete.
3. Press Delete Profile.

**Note:** *The button image may vary when a profile is selected.*

# Navigation

## CONNECTED NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may have connected navigation as a free trial after purchase. You require a subscription after the trial expires. For additional information, visit [ford.com/connectedservices](http://ford.com/connectedservices).

**Note:** If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION

-  Press the button on the touchscreen to open the application drawer.
- Press **Navigation**.

**Note:** As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact dealers at 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada, or 800-557-5539 in Mexico.

**Note:** If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to [www.here.com/mapcreator](http://www.here.com/mapcreator).

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

### CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

## LIVE TRAFFIC

### WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

### SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

- Press the tools button on the map screen.
- Press Navigation Settings.
- Press the Traffic button.
- Switch Traffic on or off.

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

- Press search bar at the top of the screen.
- Enter your destination using the keyboard.

# Navigation

---

3. Press the search button.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the pin.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

### Switching Predictive Destinations On and Off

You can switch Destination Suggestions on and off under the User Data section in the navigation settings menu.

### Setting a Destination

Access the feature bar using the touchscreen and select the predicted destination at the top of the screen. You can access additional predictive destinations by pressing the search bar on the map screen and then pressing the myTrends button.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press the recents button.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

**Note:** Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

## SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press on a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Begin navigation to a destination.
2. Search for your waypoint using the search bar.
3. Press Go!
4. Press Add to add the waypoint to your trip.

### EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the search bar on the map screen.
2. Press myTrips.
3. Press Current Trip.
4. Use the menu to add destinations, remove destinations, or rearrange destinations.

# Navigation

---

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

### REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

### CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

# Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See

## **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 366).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 398).

## **Vehicle Software Update Requirements**

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

## **Vehicle Software Update Limitations**

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
  - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
  - Charging resumes once the update completes.

## **SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS**

From settings menu, press Software Updates. See **Center Display** (page 379).

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## **Switching Automatic Updates On and Off**

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates on.

# Vehicle Software Updates

**Note:** Software updates require approval to download or install when Automatic Updates is switched off.

## Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

### Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Recurring Schedule.
2. Select the days and time for updates.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates when available. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

**Note:** The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.

### Installing Software Updates

#### Using the Status Bar

1. Press the Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

#### Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Update Details.
2. Press Update Now.

### Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, Press Update Details.

## SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

# Vehicle System Reset

---

## PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Make sure you perform a system reset whenever there is a transfer of ownership of the vehicle to prevent the loss of personal data. Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore the modem and SYNC to their factory defaults.

In the modem, this deletes all the authorized users, removes access to the connected vehicle via all linked FordPass accounts. In the SYNC system this deletes all data imported from mobile devices connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth® including the addresses manually entered into the navigation system.

**Note:** *If you are the first owner, your modem comes in partially activated state.*

**Note:** *If you are not the first owner, it comes in either fully activated, partially activated or deactivated state.*

1. From settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 379).
2. Press Reset.
3. Press Factory Reset.
4. Follow the prompts on the touchscreen to complete the reset.

## Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

<b>Web Address (United States)</b>
<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.com">www.Accessories.Ford.com</a>

<b>Web Address (Canada)</b>
<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.ca">www.Accessories.Ford.ca</a>

We will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

We will warrant your Ford Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Ford Licensed Accessories are the accessory manufacturer's designs. The manufacturer develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.



# Ford Protect

---

## WHAT IS FORD PROTECT

Protect yourself from the rising cost of vehicle repairs with a Ford Protect extended service plan.

### Ford Protect Extended Service Plans - United States Only

Ford Protect extended service plans mean peace of mind. Extended service plans are backed by Ford Motor Company, and provide more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, insist on the Ford Protect extended service plan.

### Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the service center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect extended service plan. With the Ford Protect extended service plan, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Ford Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it is probably easier to list what is not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.

Ford Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

### Rental Car Reimbursement

#### *First Day Rental Benefit*

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we will give you a rental vehicle to use for the day.

#### *Extended Rental Benefits*

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, warranty repairs, and field service actions.

### Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

### Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. This should give you and your potential buyer peace of mind.

# Ford Protect

---

## Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

The Ford Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Clutch disc - if equipped.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Cabin air filter replacement every 32,000 km (20,000 mi).

## Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 5% down payment provides you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## Ford Protect Extended Service Plan - Canada Only

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect extended service plan. Ford Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford Protect extended service plan coverage.

This information is subject to change. Visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Normal Scheduled Maintenance <sup>1</sup>	
Every 12 months or 16,000 km (10,000 mi).	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
	Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).
	Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
	Inspect the cooling system coolant level and coolant strength.
	Inspect half-shaft boots.
	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and tie-rod ends.
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

<sup>1</sup> Do not exceed one year or 16,000 km (10,000 mi) between service intervals.

Brake Fluid Maintenance <sup>1</sup>	
Every three years.	Change brake fluid. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform this maintenance item every three years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Brake fluid servicing requires special equipment available at your authorized dealer.

Other Maintenance Items	
Every 32,000 km (20,000 mi)	Replace cabin air filter. <sup>1</sup>
At 10 years or 240,000 km (150,000 mi)	Replace electric drive assembly fluid.
At 322,000 km (200,000 mi)	Change yellow coolant. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the cabin air filter.

<sup>2</sup> Initial replacement at 10 years or 322,000 km (200,000 mi), then every 5 years or 160,000 km (100,000 mi).

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; first is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep the cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual.

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Our Genuine Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock our parts and our authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use our authorized parts, they may not meet our specifications.

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

It is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We have recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. We rely upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only our genuine manufactured or our authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

#### Additives and Chemicals

We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

#### Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Make sure to change your vehicle's fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical to flush systems only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using our approved flushing chemical.

## Scheduled Maintenance Service Intervals

For your scheduled maintenance service intervals, visit <https://www.ford.com/support/maintenance-schedule>.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

### Check Every Month

Function of all interior and exterior lights.

Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.

Windshield washer fluid level.

### Check Every Six Months

12V Battery connections. Clean if necessary.

Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.

Inspect vehicle cooling systems strength and hoses.

Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.

Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.

Parking brake for proper operation.

Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.

Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.

Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

# Scheduled Maintenance

## Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major

problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point Inspection	
12V Battery performance	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Fluid levels; fill if necessary <sup>1</sup>	Steering and linkage
For fluid leaks	Tires for wear and proper pressure <sup>2</sup>
Half-shaft dust boots	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Horn operation	Washer spray and wiper operation

<sup>1</sup> Brake, coolant recovery reservoir and window washer.

<sup>2</sup> Your vehicle has a temporary mobility kit; check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

### ROLLOVER WARNING



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU AUTO LINE PROGRAM

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information that follows, call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to

## Customer Information

---

try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.  
1676 International Drive, Suite 550  
McLean, VA 22102**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

### THE MEDIATION AND ARBITRATION PROGRAM

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN THE UNITED STATES

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.



## Customer Information

---

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN CANADA

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website (English)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/recalls">http://tc.canada.ca/recalls</a>
Website (French)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/rappels">http://tc.canada.ca/rappels</a>
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

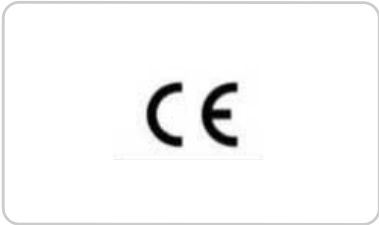
# Customer Information

## THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

## RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

### ANTENNAS European Union EU



### Ukraine



### United Kingdom



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar (RRU2)	Aptiv	2F5TR

## Customer Information

---

### Argentina



H-28070

### Brazil



15375-23-12270

### China

CMIT ID: 2023LJ10407

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

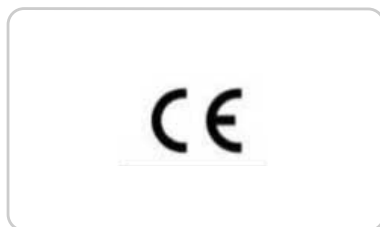
Numéro d'agrément:

040/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément:

16/04/2024

### Europe Union EU



# Customer Information

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E6-M0-XDF-TME

## Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 98785/SDPPI/2024  
PLG ID: 13493



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA - 2F5TR.

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément:

1222/ARE/2023

Date d'agrément:

06/02/2023

## Mexico

IFT: ROAP2F23-27117

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:

MR00036523ANRT2023

Date d'agrément:

30/01/23

## Paraguay



NR: 2022-04-I-0255

## South Africa



## Customer Information

---

### South Korea



R-C-1Ap-2F5TR

### Taiwan



CCA123LP0640T2

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



ER10085/22  
United Arab Emirates



### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C2F5TR

IC: 3432A-2F5TR

# Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:*

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar	Aptiv	F5TR

### Argentina



### Brazil



## Customer Information

### China

CMIIT ID: 2022LP14250

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 195/MCPT/DDTIC  
Date d'agrément : 06/09/2021

### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

### Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90715/SDPPI/2023  
PLG ID: 13493



### Europe Union EU



### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F5TR.

## Customer Information

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0985/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 24/08/2021

### Paraguay



### Mexico

NR: 2020-10-I-0753

IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

### Singapore

### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR00030033ANRT2021  
Date d'agrément : 16/09/2021

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

### South Africa





# Customer Information

## South Korea



## Taiwan

## Thailand

- (1)เพื่อใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีคุณสมบัติต้องห้ามของการพาณิชย์.
- (2)เพื่อใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีคุณสมบัติต้องห้ามของการพาณิชย์.

## Ukraine



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## Customer Information

### United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

### United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2CF5TR

IC: 3432A-F5TR

### Vietnam



# Customer Information

## PHONE AS A KEY

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Bluetooth Low Energy Module	Denso	S2NA1

IC: 26851-S2NA1

## China

CMIIT ID: 2022DJ5980

## United States and Canada

FCC ID: 2AYGPS2NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## BODY CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
D2 Bosch BCM	Bosch	P004
		P005
		P006

# Customer Information

## Argentina



CNC ID: H-25236

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-113

## Brazil



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

11941-20-07520

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X4D

## European Union EU



## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסמך משרד התקשורת: SI-72602
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרצות אלקטרוניות.

## Customer Information

### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004R.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

### Moldova

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004.



### Morocco

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – P005

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

# Customer Information

## Singapore

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Paraguay



CONATEL

## South Africa



TA-2019/5886

ICASA

APPROVED

2020-07-I-0405  
2021-01-0037

## Serbia



U011 20

## South Korea

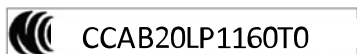
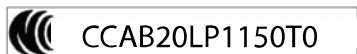
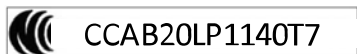


R-R-175-P005

## Customer Information

---

### Taiwan



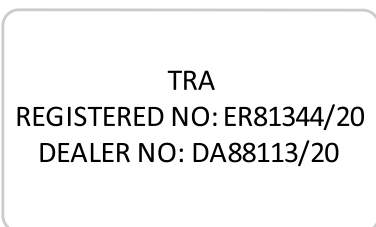
### Ukraine



### United Kingdom



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## Customer Information

---

TRA

REGISTERED NO: ER80748/20

DEALER NO: DA83047/19

TRA

REGISTERED NO: ER81343/20

DEALER NO: DA88113/20

### United States and Canada

FCC ID: LXPP004

FCC ID: LXPP006

IC: 2298A-P004

IC ID: 2298A-P006

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.



# Customer Information

## Zambia



## CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
MRR3 Medium Range Radar	Aptiv	F3TR

## Argentina



## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020  
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

## Brazil

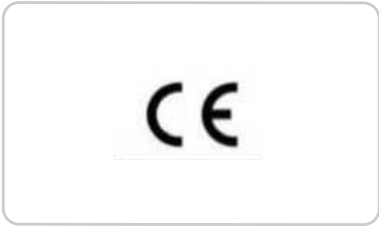


## EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan



# Customer Information

## Europe Union EU



## Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90714/SDPPI/2023  
PLG ID: 13493



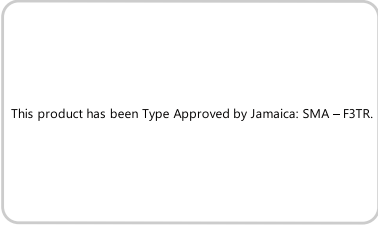
## Israel

## Ghana



1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוג מסדיר התקשורת: 51-82320  
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל חשש להפרעת אלקטרוניות.

## Jamaica



## Independent State Of Samoa



## Customer Information

### Malaysia



HIDF16000009

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

### Mexico

IFT: RCPAPF320-0479

### Moldova



### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:  
MR00030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

### Pakistan



### Paraguay



# Customer Information

## South Africa

NR: 2020-10-I-0752

## Sierra Leone



## South Korea



TAN: 2021-002-0028

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

R-C-1Ap-F3TR

## Taiwan



# Customer Information

## Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้ทรงผมขนาดเล็กแบบพกพา มีหมายเลขเครื่องใช้ทางการของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้ทรงผมขนาดเล็กแบบพกพา มีเครื่องหมายการค้าที่แสดงเครื่องหมายการค้าของผลิตภัณฑ์เครื่องใช้ทรงผมขนาดเล็กแบบพกพา

## Ukraine



## Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## United Kingdom



## United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2CF3TR  
IC: 3432A-F3TR

# Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

- 1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
- 2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

## Zambia



## PASSIVE KEY

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key Transmitter	Continental	A3C108397

# Customer Information

## Argentina

(RAMATEL Isologotype)



RAMATEL  
H-28042

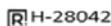


RAMATEL H-28042

(RAMATEL Isotype)



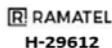
H-28042



(RAMATEL Isologotype)



RAMATEL  
H-29612

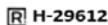


RAMATEL H-29612

(RAMATEL Isotype)



H-29612



(RAMATEL Isologotype)



RAMATEL  
H-30147



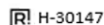
H-30147

RAMATEL H-30417

(RAMATEL Isotype)



H-30147



## Brazil



03184-23-06546

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-85634  
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במסגרת שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, תחלופת אנטנה מקבוצת או חיסולת אישורות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלקטרוניות.

# Customer Information

## Jamaica

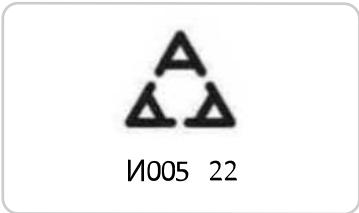
This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A3C108397

## Paraguay



NR: 2022-03-I-0162

## Serbia



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

Dealer License Number:

DA 00461

## South Africa



## Taiwan



CCAB22LP1030T3

## Thailand

- (1) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมแบบสรุปกรณี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมแบบสรุปกรณี้ ได้รับการขึ้นทะเบียนให้เข้าตลาดเครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท. และปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์
- หากการใช้เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมที่ครอบคลุมการปฏิบัติงานใช้โทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศ



## Customer Information

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

**TDR**A

ER08930/22  
United Arab Emirates



### United Kingdom

**UK  
CA**

### United States and Canada

FCC ID: M3N-A3C108397

IC ID: 7812A-A3C108397

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

# Customer Information

## SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

## Argentina



COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24008

## Brazil



08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24009



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019  
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

## Customer Information

---

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019  
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

### Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



### European Union EU



Model: SYNC-G4L  
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

## Customer Information

---

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

### Malaysia



### Moldova



### Morocco

HIDF16000009

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019  
07 AOUT 2019

**AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE**  
**Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018**  
**Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019**

## Customer Information

---

### Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019  
07 AOÛT 2019



U005 20

### Pakistan



### Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

### Paraguay



### South Africa



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

# Customer Information

---

TA-2019/2466



CCAB20LP0300T1

## South Korea



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

## Ukraine



UA.TR.028

## Taiwan



CCAB20LP0290T8

## Customer Information

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

**TDR**

ER74903/19  
United Arab Emirates



**TDR**

ER74902/19  
United Arab Emirates



### United Kingdom

**UK  
CA**

### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

# Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



## Zambia



## TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FB5-TCU



## Customer Information

### Argentina



C-28150

### Malaysia



HIDF16000009

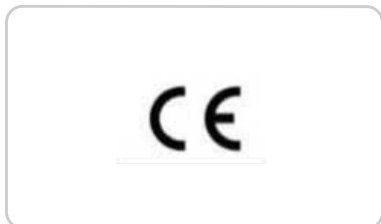
### Brazil



### Mexico



### Europe Union EU

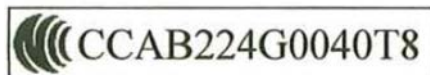


## Customer Information

### South Africa



### Taiwan



We recommend that the distance between the antenna of the telematics control unit and the user be greater than 35 cm (14 in) when using the telematics control unit.

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

## Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

### Vietnam



### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Burnell TPM Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	BG2BP4

## Customer Information

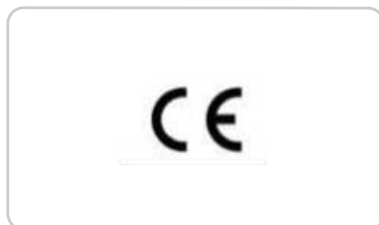
---

### Argentina

13309-22-08001



### European Union EU



CNC ID: H-28035

### Brazil



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type BG2BP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.schradertpms.com/en-gb/downloads>

# Customer Information

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86230
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או חוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלקטרוניות.

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BG2BP4.

## Malaysia



HIDF16000009

## Mexico

IFT: RLVSCBG22-2502

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:  
MR00034968ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/12/2022

## Paraguay



# Customer Information

NR: 2022-05-I-0000331

## South Korea

## Serbia



MSIP-R-C-SRD-BG2BP4

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards  
DA 00461

## Taiwan



CCAB22LP0730T0

## Thailand

## South Africa



- (1) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ ที่มีความปลอดภัยตามข้อกำหนดของ กททช.
- (2) เครื่องใช้โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ ที่ผ่านการทดสอบความปลอดภัยตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยของศูนย์ทดสอบแห่งชาติ
- จากการขึ้นทะเบียนและทดสอบการก่อกวนใช้โทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศการก่อกวน

## Customer Information

---

### Ukraine



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXBG2BP4

IC: 2546A-BG2BP4

## Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Nota:** Tout changement apporté au dispositif sans l'approbation expresse des autorités compétentes pourrait révoquer le droit de l'utilisateur d'en faire usage.

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1
		WCFDM00N2A3
		WCFDM00N2A5

### Argentina

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26491

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

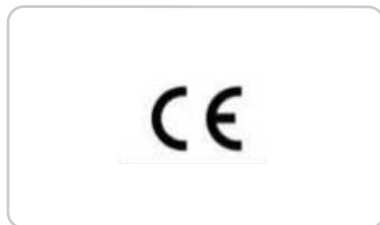
CNCID: H-26492



## Customer Information

---

### European Union



### Brazil



### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

### Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HER-062/Avril/2023

Date d'homologation: 28/4/2023

### Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1

Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022

PLG ID: 13493



# Customer Information

Model: WCFDM00N2A3  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015:  
2. תל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש ברן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Model: WCFDM00N2A5  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80013:  
2. תל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש ברן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014:  
2. תל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש ברן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

## Malaysia



# Customer Information

HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

# Customer Information

## Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021



W005 21

## Paraguay



NR: 2021-04-I-0202  
NR: 2021-04-I-0203  
NR: 2021-04-I-0204

## Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Russia



## Customer Information

### South Africa



### South Korea



R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

### Taiwan



**CCAB21LP050AT3**



**CCAB21LP0500T1**



**CCAB21LP050BT5**

**品名 (Product name):** 無線充電座

**型號 (Type Designation):** WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 **產地 (Origin):** 馬來西亞

**額定電壓 (Input rating):** 12V

**製造日期 (Approval date):** 2021.04.21



**申請廠商名稱 (Approval name):** 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

**申請廠商地址 (Approval address):** 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

## Customer Information

---

### Ukraine



### United Kingdom



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



# Customer Information



ER00421/21  
United Arab Emirates



## United States and Canada

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

FCC ID: BEJWCFDM00N2A

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

**RF Radiation Exposure Statement:** This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:*

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

## Customer Information

### Vietnam



### REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Zambia



### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

### PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:  
[www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).



## Customer Information

---

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

### MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION REGULATION

Regulations such as those issued by the Federal Highway Administration or issued pursuant to the Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), and state and local laws and regulations may require additional equipment for the way you intend to use your vehicle. It is the responsibility of the registered owner to determine the applicability of such laws and regulations to your intended use for the vehicle, and to arrange for the installation of required equipment. The dealer has information about the availability of equipment which can be ordered for your vehicle.

# Customer Information

---

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

## Customer Information

---

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components"). SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

## Customer Information

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

### **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

# Customer Information

---

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

## Customer Information

---

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

### Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

## Customer Information

---

### Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

### Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

## Customer Information

---

### **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator



## Customer Information

---

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND

## Customer Information

---

UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES

# Customer Information

---

PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

## VII. China Territory

### **Personal Use Only**

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### **Restrictions**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer

devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### **Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

### **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE,

# Customer Information

---

MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

## Customer Information

---

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

### **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO

# Customer Information

WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

### Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

### SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelomatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

# Customer Information

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

## 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

## 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

# Customer Information

---

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

## WARRANTY INFORMATION

The following warranties may apply to your vehicle:

- New vehicle limited warranties.
- Emissions warranties, if applicable. (Note: Fully-electric vehicles are not eligible for emissions warranties.)
- Other warranties, if applicable.

Detailed warranty information specific to your vehicle can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

The following California Warranty Statement, required by California regulations, applies to vehicles certified to California emissions standards and registered in a state that requires California emissions warranty. If applicable, additional California Emissions Warranties can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

### YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your (year) vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designated, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford Motor Company must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies. Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

### MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE:

(For 1990 and subsequent model passenger cars, light-duty trucks, and medium-duty vehicles.)

- For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford Motor Company to ensure that your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.



## Customer Information

---

2) If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

- For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

### **OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford Motor Company cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

- You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford or Lincoln dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

- As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact Ford Customer Service at 1-800-392-3673 or the California Air Resource Board at 4001 Iowa Avenue, Riverside, CA 92507.

### **New Vehicle Limited Warranty**

Your vehicle comes with a New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The express warranties of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are in substitution for and exclude all other liabilities of any kind whether arising under statute, in tort, by implication of law or otherwise including, to the full extent as may be allowed by law, liability for any other representations respecting the vehicle, statutory warranties or implied warranties or conditions as to its merchantability or fitness.

Download a free electronic copy or order one free printed copy of the most up-to-date Warranty Guide by visiting the Owner Manuals section of [owner.ford.com](http://owner.ford.com) (United States).

For Canada, visit [ford.ca/warranty](http://ford.ca/warranty).

For Limo/Livery/Hearse vehicles: View and download your Warranty Guide by visiting the Warranty Information section of the Fleet website, [fleet.ford.com/limo](http://fleet.ford.com/limo) (United States only).

## Appendices

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

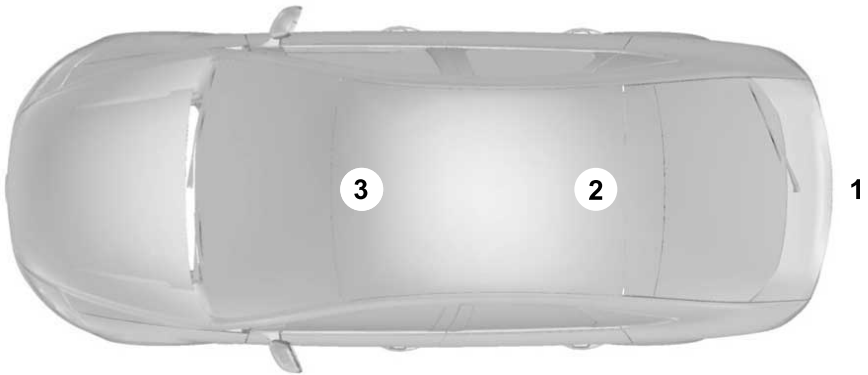


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

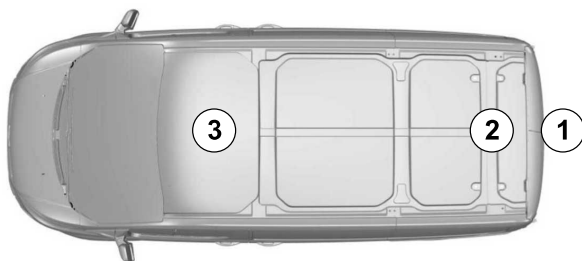
#### Car



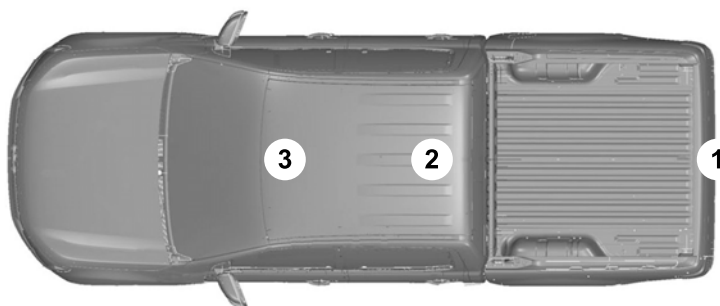
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



# Appendices

---

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

# Index

## 1

12V Battery.....	312
Changing the 12V Battery.....	312
Charging the 12V Battery.....	313
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	313
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	313
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	313

## 3

360 Degree Camera.....	209
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	210
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	210
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	209
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	209
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	210
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	210
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	211

## 9

911 Assist.....	58
-----------------	----

## A

### A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	117
About This Publication.....	15
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	182
Accessing Navigation.....	394
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	148
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	115
Accessories.....	400
AC Charging.....	164
Charging at Home.....	164
Charging in Public.....	166
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	212
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	225
Lane Centering.....	219
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	222

Predictive Speed Assist.....	223
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	225
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation.....	215
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	219
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	212
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	212
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	225
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	225
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	109
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	313
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	104
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor.....	283
Adjusting the Map.....	394
Changing the Format of the Map.....	394
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	394
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	43
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	43
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	371
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	89
Adjusting the Volume.....	370
Aid Mode.....	245
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	245
What Is Aid Mode.....	245
Airbag Precautions.....	50
Airbags.....	48
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	52
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	117
Air Conditioning System Refrigerant.....	120
Alert and Aid Mode.....	245
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	245
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	245
Alert Mode.....	244
How Does Alert Mode Work.....	245
What Is Alert Mode.....	244
Alexa Built-In.....	384

# Index

Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	384	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	108
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	384	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	
All-Wheel Drive.....	181	Limitations.....	108
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	181	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior	
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	181	Mirror.....	108
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	181	Auto Hold.....	193
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	181	Auto Hold Indicators.....	193
All-Wheel Drive – Information		Autolamps.....	97
Messages.....	181	Autolamp Settings.....	97
AM/FM Radio.....	371	What Are Autolamps.....	97
AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	371	Autolock.....	69
Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station.....	371	Autolock Requirements.....	69
Ambient Lighting.....	104	Switching Autolock On and Off.....	69
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	104	What Is Autolock.....	69
Switching Ambient Lighting On and		Automatically Releasing the Electric	
Off.....	104	Parking Brake.....	185
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	182	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	296
Anti-Lock Braking System		Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	296
Limitations.....	182	What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	296
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	266
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86	Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm		On and Off.....	266
System.....	86	What Is Automatic Emergency	
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System		Braking.....	266
Work.....	86	Automatic High Beam Control.....	100
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86	Automatic High Beam Control	
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	86	Indicators.....	101
Appendices.....	474	Automatic High Beam Control	
Applying the Electric Parking		Limitations.....	101
Brake.....	185	Automatic High Beam Control	
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an		Precautions.....	100
Emergency.....	185	Automatic High Beam Control	
Approach Detection		Requirements.....	101
See: Switching Welcome Lighting On and		How Does Automatic High Beam Control	
Off.....	99	Work.....	100
Audio System.....	370	Overriding Automatic High Beam	
AM/FM Radio.....	371	Control.....	101
Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	375	Switching Automatic High Beam Control	
Digital Radio.....	372	On and Off.....	101
Satellite Radio.....	373	Automatic High Beam Control –	
Audio System Precautions.....	370	Troubleshooting.....	102
Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	375	Automatic High Beam Control –	
Audio System – Information		Information Messages.....	102
Messages.....	375	Automatic Lane Change.....	232
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	110	Automatic Locking Mode.....	42
What Is the Auto-Dimming Exterior		Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	42
Mirror.....	110	Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	42
		What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	42

# Index

When to Use Automatic Locking Mode.....	42
Auto Mode.....	119
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	119
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	119
Autounlock.....	68
Autounlock Requirements.....	68
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	69
What Is Autounlock.....	68
Autowipers.....	91
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	91
Autowipers Settings.....	91
What Are Autowipers.....	91
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	181

## B

Battery Fuse Box.....	304
Accessing the Battery Fuse Box.....	304
Identifying the Fuses in the Battery Fuse Box.....	305
Locating the Battery Fuse Box.....	304
Blind Spot Assist.....	246
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	247
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	247
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	246
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	246
Blind Spot Information System.....	251
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	253
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	252
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	251
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	251
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	251
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	253
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	253
BlueCruise Alerts.....	230
BlueCruise Automatic Cancellation.....	231
BlueCruise.....	227
BlueCruise – Troubleshooting.....	236
In-Lane Repositioning.....	235
Lane Change Assist.....	233
Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting.....	234
BlueCruise Indicators.....	231
BlueCruise Limitations.....	229
BlueCruise Precautions.....	228
BlueCruise Requirements.....	229
BlueCruise Settings.....	230
BlueCruise – Troubleshooting.....	236
BlueCruise – Information Messages.....	236
Bluetooth®.....	391
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	305
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	306
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	306
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	305
Body Styling Kit Precautions.....	322
Body Styling Kits.....	322
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	309
Booster Seats.....	37
Brake Coach.....	114
Brake Fluid Specification.....	183
Brake Over Accelerator.....	182
Brake Precautions.....	182
Brakes.....	182
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	182
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	184
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	184
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	184
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	184

## C

Calculating Payload.....	277
Calculating the Load Limit.....	278
Canceling the Set Speed.....	217
Center Display.....	379
Center Display Overview.....	379
Changing a Flat Tire.....	361
Changing a Road Wheel.....	361

# Index

Changing the Remote Control	
Battery.....	61
Charge Coupler Manual Release.....	169
Charge Port Indicators.....	163
Charging a Device.....	141
Charging a Wireless Device.....	144
Charging Equipment Indicators.....	159
Charging Equipment Overview.....	154
Charging Equipment Precautions.....	153
Charging Settings.....	170
Charging Your Vehicle.....	153
AC Charging.....	164
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	174
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	174
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	176
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	175
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps.....	174
Charging Your Vehicle Videos.....	176
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	182
Checking the Seatbelts.....	45
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	337
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	92
Children and Airbags.....	51
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	30
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	31
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Child Restraints.....	31
Child Restraint Position Information.....	31
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	32
Child Safety.....	29
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Child Restraints.....	31
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	39
Installing Child Restraints.....	32
Child Safety Locks.....	39
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	39
Child Safety Locks – Information Messages.....	39
Child Safety Precautions.....	29
Cleaning Products.....	317
Cleaning the Exterior.....	317
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	319
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	318
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	318
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	318
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	317
Cleaning the Underbody.....	319
Cleaning Wheels.....	318
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	318
Cleaning the Interior.....	319
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	320
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	319
Cleaning Fabric.....	320
Cleaning Plastic.....	319
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	320
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	321
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	319
Cleaning Vinyl.....	320
Climate Control.....	117
Auto Mode.....	119
Climate Control – Warning Lamps.....	119
Closing the Frunk.....	281
Closing the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	281
Closing the Liftgate.....	80
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	80
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	80
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	81
Connected Navigation.....	394
Connected Vehicle.....	366
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	367
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	366
Connected Vehicle Data.....	24
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	366
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	366
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	367



# Index

Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	367
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	367
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	391
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	366
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	366
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	366
What Is the Modem.....	366
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	366
Connecting Your Phone.....	386
Contacting Us.....	13
Coolant.....	310
Adding Coolant.....	310
Changing the Coolant.....	312
Checking the Coolant Level.....	310
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	312
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	290
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	296
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	292
Post-Crash Alert System.....	295
Recovery Towing.....	296
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	55
Creating a Personal Profile.....	392
Cross Traffic Alert.....	258
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	261
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	261
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	259
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	258
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	261
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	261
Cup Holders.....	146
Cup Holder Precautions.....	146
Customer Information.....	407
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	410
<b>D</b>	
Data Privacy.....	22
DC Charging.....	167
Deleting a Personal Profile.....	393
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades.....	325
Digital Radio.....	372
Digital Radio Indicators.....	373
Digital Radio Limitations.....	372
How Does Digital Radio Work.....	372
Switching Digital Radio Reception On and Off.....	372
What Is Digital Radio.....	372
Dinghy Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle.....	298
Directing the Flow of Air.....	119
Disposing of Airbags.....	56
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	69
Doors and Locks.....	68
Autolock.....	69
Autounlock.....	68
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	69
Mislock.....	69
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	68
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	68
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	69
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....	71
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	70
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	69
Drive Mode Control.....	238
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	239
Drive Modes.....	238
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	239
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions.....	241
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	240
Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps.....	239
Drive Modes.....	238
Engage.....	238
RallySport.....	238
Unbridle.....	238
Whisper.....	239

# Index

Driver Alert.....	272
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	274
Driver Alert Indicators.....	273
Driver Alert Limitations.....	273
Driver Alert Precautions.....	272
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	274
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	274
Driver Assistance Menu.....	381
Driving Hints.....	285
Electric Vehicle.....	288
Driving in Cold Weather.....	285
Driving In Sand.....	287
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	286
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	286
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	287
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	272

## E

Easy Entry and Exit.....	78
Electric Motor Audible Warnings.....	179
Electric Motor.....	177
Roll-Away Protection.....	179
Selector Positions.....	177
Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	186
Electric Parking Brake.....	185
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	186
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	186
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	187
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	186
Electric Power Steering.....	200
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	200
How Does Electric Power Steering	
Work.....	200
Electric Vehicle.....	288
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	288
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	474
Emergency Call Limitations.....	59
Emergency Call Requirements.....	58
Emergency Call System Data.....	25
Emergency Towing.....	298
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device.....	389
Enabling or Disabling Personal	
Profiles.....	392
End User License Agreement.....	458
Environment.....	26
Evasive Steering Assist.....	266
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	267
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and	
Off.....	267
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	266
Event Data.....	23
Exit Warning.....	254
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	257
Exit Warning Indicators.....	256
Exit Warning Limitations.....	255
Exit Warning Precautions.....	254
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	257
Exit Warning – Information	
Messages.....	257
Export Unique Options.....	472
Exterior Bulbs.....	315
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	315
Exterior Lamps.....	98
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	99
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On	
and Off.....	98
Switching Welcome Lighting On and	
Off.....	99
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	99
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	98
Exterior Lighting Control.....	96
Exterior Lighting.....	96
Autolamps.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control.....	100
Automatic High Beam Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	102
Exterior Lamps.....	98
Headlamps.....	96
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	97
Exterior Lighting Videos.....	102
Exterior Mirrors.....	109
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	110
Exterior Overview.....	28

## F

Fastening and Unfastening the	
Seatbelts.....	41

# Index

Federal Highway Administration	
Regulation.....	457
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	361
Flat Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your	
Vehicle.....	298
Floor Mats.....	288
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	109
Ford Assistant.....	382
Ford Assistant – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	382
Ford Assistant Settings.....	382
Using Ford Assistant.....	382
Ford Protect.....	401
Forward Collision Warning.....	266
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward	
Collision Warning.....	266
What Is Forward Collision Warning.....	266
Four Wheels Down Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your	
Vehicle.....	298
Front Parking Aid.....	203
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	204
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	204
Locating the Front Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	204
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	203
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	52
Front Passenger Sensing System	
Indicators.....	54
Front Passenger Sensing System	
Precautions.....	54
How Does the Front Passenger Sensing	
System Work.....	52
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing	
System.....	52
Front Seat Precautions.....	122
Front Seats.....	122
Heated Seats.....	127
Manual Seats.....	123
Power Seats.....	125
Ventilated Seats.....	128
Fuse Precautions.....	299
Fuses.....	299
Battery Fuse Box.....	304
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	305
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	308
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	299
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	308
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	308
<b>G</b>	
Garage Door Opener Additional	
Assistance.....	139
Garage Door Opener.....	136
Garage Door Opener Introduction.....	136
Garage Door Opener Precautions and	
Frequencies.....	136
General Maintenance Information.....	404
Glasses Holder.....	146
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	146
Global Opening and Closing.....	105
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	106
Switching Global Opening On and	
Off.....	106
Using Global Closing.....	106
Using Global Opening.....	106
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	105
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	331
Glove Compartment.....	146
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	146
<b>H</b>	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	313
Headlamps.....	96
Headlamp Indicators.....	96
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and	
Off.....	96
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	96
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	97
Headlamps – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	97
Heated Seats.....	127
Heated Seat Precautions.....	127
Switching the Heated Seats On and	
Off.....	128
Heating	
See: Climate Control – Vehicles With: Dual	
Automatic Temperature Control	
(DATC).....	117
High Voltage Battery Gauge.....	112

# Index

High Voltage Battery.....	150	How Do Personal Profiles Work.....	392
High Voltage Battery –		How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	48
Troubleshooting.....	151	How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	49
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	150	How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	48
High Voltage Battery –			
Troubleshooting.....	151		
High Voltage Battery – Warning			
Lamps.....	151		
High Voltage Battery Vehicle		Icon Glossary	
Precautions.....	291	See: Symbols Glossary.....	17
Hill Start Assist.....	192	Icons	
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	192	See: Symbols Glossary.....	17
Hood Lock		Identifying Fuse Types.....	308
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	309	Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	117
Horn.....	89	Inflating the Tires.....	337
How Does 911 Assist Work.....	58	Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	326
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With		In-Lane Repositioning.....	235
Stop and Go Work.....	212	How Does In-Lane Repositioning	
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	181	Work.....	235
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	193	In-Lane Repositioning Indicators.....	235
How Does Blind Spot Information		Switching In-Lane Repositioning On and	
System Work.....	251	Off.....	235
How Does BlueCruise Work.....	227	Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	339
How Does Cross Traffic Alert		Inspecting the Tire for Wear.....	338
Work.....	258	Inspecting the Wheel Valve	
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	272	Stems.....	343
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	78	Installing and Removing the Luggage	
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	254	Compartment Cover.....	281
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	192	Installing Child Restraints.....	32
How Does Pre-Collision Assist		Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors	
Work.....	262	for Attaching Child Restraints.....	36
How Does Reverse Brake Assist		Installing a Child Restraint in a Center	
Work.....	188	Seat.....	35
How Does Speed Sign Recognition		Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for	
Work.....	269	Children.....	34
How Does Stability Control Work.....	196	Using Seatbelts.....	32
How Does the 360 Degree Camera		Using Tether Straps.....	36
Work.....	209	Installing the Vehicle Identification	
How Does the Lane Keeping System		Card.....	364
Work.....	243	Instrument Cluster Display.....	114
How Does the Personal Safety System		Instrument Cluster.....	111
Work.....	47	Instrument Cluster Overview.....	111
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert		Interior Air Quality.....	121
System Work.....	132	Interior Bulbs.....	315
How Does the Safety Canopy™		Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	315
Work.....	49	Interior Lamp Function.....	103
How Does Traction Control Work.....	194	Switching the Interior Lamp Function On	
How Does Walk Away Lock Work.....	77	and Off.....	103
		What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	103

# Index

Interior Lighting.....	103
Ambient Lighting.....	104
Interior Lamp Function.....	103
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	104
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	104
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	104
Interior Mirror.....	108
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	108
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	108
Interior Overview.....	27
Introduction.....	15

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	292
Jump Starting Precautions.....	292
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	295
Preparing the Vehicle.....	293

## K

Keyless Entry.....	72
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	73
Keyless Entry Keypad.....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	76
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations.....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code.....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes.....	74
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	76
Keyless Entry Keypad – Frequently Asked Questions.....	76
Keyless Entry Keypad Videos.....	76
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	72
Keyless Entry Settings.....	72
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	73
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	73
Keys and Remote Controls.....	60
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	63

Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	63
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	63

## L

Lane Centering.....	219
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	219
Lane Centering Alerts.....	221
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	221
Lane Centering Indicators.....	222
Lane Centering Limitations.....	220
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	221
Lane Centering Precautions.....	219
Lane Centering Requirements.....	220
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	220
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	222
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	222
Lane Change Assist.....	233
How Does Lane Change Assist Work.....	233
Lane Change Assist Cancellation.....	234
Lane Change Assist Limitations.....	234
Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off.....	234
Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting.....	234
Lane Change Assist – Information Messages.....	234
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	246
Lane Keeping System.....	243
Aid Mode.....	245
Alert and Aid Mode.....	245
Alert Mode.....	244
Blind Spot Assist.....	246
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	249
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	243
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	243
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	244
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	249
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	250

# Index

Lane Keeping System – Information	
Messages.....	249
Liftgate.....	79
Closing the Liftgate.....	80
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	82
Opening the Liftgate.....	79
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	81
Liftgate Precautions.....	84
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	82
Liftgate – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	83
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	82
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	82
Linking or Unlinking a Personal	
Profile.....	392
Live Traffic.....	394
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	394
What Is Live Traffic.....	394
Load Carrying.....	275
Load Carrying Precautions.....	275
Locating the 360 Degree	
Cameras.....	209
Locating the Blind Spot Information	
System Sensors.....	252
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	182
Locating the Charge Port.....	163
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert	
Sensors.....	260
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	256
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	74
Locating the Memory Function	
Buttons.....	135
Locating the Power Outlets.....	143
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist	
Sensors.....	265
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	207
Locating the Safety Compliance	
Certification Labels.....	276
Locating the Tire label.....	325
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator	
Kit.....	345
Locating the USB Ports.....	140
Locating the Wireless Accessory	
Charger.....	144
Locating Your Vehicle.....	61
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	107
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	89
Luggage Compartment Anchor	
Points.....	283
Locating the Luggage Compartment	
Anchor Points.....	283
Luggage Compartment.....	280
Closing the Frunk.....	281
Luggage Compartment Anchor	
Points.....	283
Luggage Compartment –	
Troubleshooting.....	283
Opening the Frunk.....	280
Luggage Compartment	
Precautions.....	280
Luggage Compartment –	
Troubleshooting.....	283
Luggage Compartment – Warning	
Lamps.....	283
Luggage Compartment Videos.....	283
<b>M</b>	
Maintenance.....	309
12V Battery.....	312
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	313
Coolant.....	310
Exterior Bulbs.....	315
Interior Bulbs.....	315
Maintenance Precautions.....	309
Making and Receiving a Phone	
Call.....	387
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking	
Brake.....	185
Manual Seats.....	123
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	123
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	124
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	125
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	131
Head Restraint Components.....	123
Installing the Head Restraint.....	124
Moving the Seat Backward and	
Forward.....	124
Removing the Head Restraint.....	124
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	131
Media Control Buttons.....	370
Memory Function.....	135
Memory Function Precautions.....	135
Mislock.....	69
Mislock Limitations.....	69

# Index

Switching Mislock On and Off.....	69
What Is Mislock.....	69
Mobile Communications	
Equipment.....	457
Mobile Device Data.....	25
Motorcraft Parts.....	316
Muting the Audio.....	371

## N

Navigation Map Updates.....	394
Navigation.....	394
Adjusting the Map.....	394
Live Traffic.....	394
Route Guidance.....	396
Setting a Destination.....	394
Waypoints.....	395
Neutral Towing	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle.....	298
Neutral Tow	
See: Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle.....	298

## O

One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	242
One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	242
One Pedal Drive.....	242
One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	242
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	309
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	105
Opening the Frunk.....	280
Opening the Frunk from Inside Your Vehicle.....	280
Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	280
Opening the Liftgate.....	79
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	79
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	79
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	80
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	68
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	68

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	68
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	68
Opening and Closing the Doors.....	68
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	68
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	397
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	397
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	189
Overriding the Set Speed.....	218
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	397
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	397
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	397
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	397

## P

Parking Aid Indicators.....	205
Parking Aid Precautions.....	202
Parking Aids.....	202
Front Parking Aid.....	203
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	206
Rear Parking Aid.....	203
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	206
Parking Aids – Information	
Messages.....	206
Parking Aids Videos.....	206
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	86
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	86
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	86
Pedestrian Alert System.....	57
Perchlorate.....	456
Performance Vehicle Precautions - GT.....	285
Performance Vehicle Precautions - Vehicles With: Mustang Mach-E Rally.....	285
Performing a System Reset.....	399
Personal Profiles.....	392
Personal Safety System	
Components.....	47
Personal Safety System™.....	47

# Index

Phone as a Key Limitations.....	64	Pre-Collision Assist –	
Phone as a Key.....	64	Troubleshooting.....	267
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting.....	66	Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked	
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting.....	66	Questions.....	268
Phone as a Key – Frequently Asked		Pre-Collision Assist – Information	
Questions.....	66	Messages.....	267
Phone Menu.....	386	Pre-Collision Assist – Warning	
Phone.....	386	Lamps.....	267
Phone Precautions.....	386	Predictive Speed Assist.....	223
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	391	Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	224
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	140	How Does Predictive Speed Assist	
Post-Collision Braking.....	295	Work.....	223
Post-Crash Alert System.....	295	Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	224
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System		Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	224
Work.....	295	Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	224
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	295	Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	223
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System		Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode	
Off.....	295	On and Off.....	224
What Is the Post-Crash Alert		Predictive Speed Assist –	
System.....	295	Troubleshooting.....	225
Power Gauge.....	112	Predictive Speed Assist – Information	
Powering Off.....	147	Messages.....	225
Power Outlet.....	143	Preparing Your Vehicle for	
Power Outlet Precautions.....	143	Storage.....	323
Power Seats.....	125	Preserving Your High Voltage	
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	125	Battery.....	150
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	127	Programming the Garage Door	
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	127	Opener.....	137
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	127	Programming the Remote Control.....	63
Head Restraint Components.....	125	Programming Your Phone.....	64
Installing the Head Restraint.....	126	Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front	
Moving the Seat Backward and		Passenger Seats.....	51
Forward.....	126	Protecting the Environment.....	26
Removing the Head Restraint.....	126	Puncture	
Power-Up		See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	361
See: Software Update Settings.....	397		
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	397		
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	263		
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	262		
Pre-Collision Assist.....	262		
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	266		
Evasive Steering Assist.....	266		
Forward Collision Warning.....	266		
Pre-Collision Assist –			
Troubleshooting.....	267		

## R

Radio Frequency Certification	
Labels.....	410
Antennas.....	410
Blind Spot Information System	
Sensors.....	410
Body Control Module.....	419
Cruise Control Module.....	425
Passive Key.....	430
Phone as a Key.....	419
SYNC.....	434



# Index

Telematics Control Unit.....	440	Remote Start Settings.....	116
Tire Pressure Monitoring System		Removing Your Vehicle From	
Sensors.....	443	Storage.....	324
Wireless Accessory Charging		Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	321
Module.....	448	Replacement Parts	
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible		Recommendation.....	456
Warnings.....	134	Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Rear Occupant Alert System		Control.....	63
Indicators.....	133	Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	121
Rear Occupant Alert System		Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	92
Limitations.....	132	Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	93
Rear Occupant Alert System		Reporting Safety Defects in	
Precautions.....	132	Canada.....	409
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	132	Reporting Safety Defects in the United	
Rear Occupant Alert System		States.....	408
Settings.....	133	Resetting the Trip Computer.....	115
Rear Parking Aid.....	203	Restarting the Vehicle After Powering	
Locating the Rear Parking Aid		Off.....	147
Sensors.....	203	Resuming the Set Speed.....	217
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	203	Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	189
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	203	Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	188
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	203	Reverse Brake Assist.....	188
Rear Seats.....	130	Reverse Brake Assist –	
Manual Seats.....	130	Troubleshooting.....	190
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	207	Reverse Brake Assist –	
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	207	Troubleshooting.....	190
Rear View Camera.....	207	Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked	
Rear View Camera Settings.....	208	Questions.....	191
Rear View Camera Settings.....	208	Reverse Brake Assist – Information	
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and		Messages.....	190
Off.....	208	Reverse Wipe.....	92
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and		Reverse Wipe Settings.....	92
Out.....	208	What Is Reverse Wipe.....	92
Rebooting the Center Display.....	381	Roadside Assistance.....	290
Recalling a Preset Position.....	135	Roll-Away Protection.....	179
Recovery Towing.....	296	How Does Roll-Away Protection	
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	296	Work.....	179
Installing the Towing Eye.....	296	Roll-Away Protection Limitations.....	179
Locating the Towing Eye.....	296	Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and	
Recreationally Towing Your		Off.....	180
Vehicle.....	298	Rollover Warning.....	407
Recycling and Disposing of the High		Route Guidance.....	396
Voltage Battery.....	151	Adjusting the Guidance Prompt	
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if		Volume.....	396
the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of		Canceling Route Guidance.....	396
Charge.....	186	Repeating an Instruction.....	396
Remote Control Limitations.....	60		
Remote Start.....	116		

# Index

## S

Satellite Radio.....	373
Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number.....	374
Satellite Radio Limitations.....	373
Satellite Radio Settings.....	374
Selecting a Channel.....	374
What Is Satellite Radio.....	373
Saving a Preset Position.....	135
Scheduled Maintenance.....	403
Seatbelt Extensions.....	45
Seatbelt Precautions.....	40
Seatbelt Reminder.....	43
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	45
How Does the Seatbelt Reminder Work.....	43
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	44
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	43
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	44
Seatbelts.....	40
Automatic Locking Mode.....	42
Seatbelt Reminder.....	43
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	42
SecuriCode	
See: Keyless Entry Keypad.....	74
Security.....	86
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	86
Security – Troubleshooting.....	87
Security – Troubleshooting.....	87
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	88
Security – Information Messages.....	87
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	238
Selecting a Personal Profile.....	393
Selecting the Audio Source.....	370
Selector Positions.....	177
Drive (D).....	178
Electric Motor Precautions.....	177
Neutral (N).....	178
Park (P).....	177
Reverse (R).....	178
Selector Position Indicators.....	178
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	177
Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	388
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	42
How Does Sensitive Locking Mode Work.....	42
What Is Sensitive Locking Mode.....	42
Service Data.....	23
Setting a Destination.....	394
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	395
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	395
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	395
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	395
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	395
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	394
Setting a Memory Preset.....	371
Settings Data.....	24
Settings.....	380
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	216
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed.....	215
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	118
Setting the Clock and Date.....	371
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....	80
Setting the Temperature.....	118
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	178
Signing In to Your Account.....	384
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	122
Software Update Indicators.....	398
Software Update Settings.....	397
Software Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	397
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	397
Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	61
Speedometer.....	112
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....	270
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations.....	269
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions.....	269
Speed Sign Recognition Settings.....	270

# Index

Speed Sign Recognition.....	269	Switching Blind Spot Information	
Speed Sign Recognition –		System On and Off.....	252
Troubleshooting.....	270	Switching BlueCruise On and Off.....	230
Speed Sign Recognition –		Switching Climate Control On and	
Troubleshooting.....	270	Off.....	117
Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked		Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and	
Questions.....	271	Off.....	260
Speed Sign Recognition – Information		Switching Defrost On and Off.....	117
Messages.....	270	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	273
Stability Control Indicator.....	199	Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and	
Stability Control.....	196	Off.....	78
Starting and Powering Off		Switching Exit Warning On and	
Precautions.....	147	Off.....	256
Starting and Powering Off.....	147	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control	
Starting and Powering Off –		to Cruise Control.....	219
Troubleshooting.....	149	Switching Maximum Cooling On and	
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	148	Off.....	118
Starting and Powering Off –		Switching Maximum Defrost On and	
Troubleshooting.....	149	Off.....	117
Starting and Powering Off – Frequently		Switching One Pedal Drive On and	
Asked Questions.....	149	Off.....	242
Starting the Vehicle.....	147	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	202
Status Bar.....	379	Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and	
Steering.....	200	Off.....	265
Electric Power Steering.....	200	Switching Recirculated Air On and	
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	201	Off.....	117
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	201	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and	
Steering – Information Messages.....	201	Off.....	189
Steering – Warning Lamps.....	201	Switching Stability Control On and	
Steering Wheel.....	89	Off.....	197
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	81	Switching Text Message Notification On	
Storage.....	146	and Off.....	389
Cup Holders.....	146	Switching the Audio Unit On and	
Glasses Holder.....	146	Off.....	370
Glove Compartment.....	146	Switching the Electric Heater On and	
Storing Your Vehicle.....	323	Off.....	118
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On		Switching the Front Interior Lamps On	
and Off.....	214	and Off.....	103
Switching Air Conditioning On and		Switching the Hazard Flashers On and	
Off.....	117	Off.....	292
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On		Switching the Heated Mirrors On and	
and Off.....	103	Off.....	118
Switching Android Auto™ On and		Switching the Heated Rear Window On	
Off.....	389	and Off.....	118
Switching Apple CarPlay On and		Switching the Heated Steering Wheel	
Off.....	389	On and Off – Vehicles With: Heated	
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	193	Steering Wheel.....	89

# Index

Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	244
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	244
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	103
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	92
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	194
Switching Walk Away Lock Audible Feedback On and Off.....	77
Switching Walk Away Lock On and Off.....	77
Symbols Glossary.....	17
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	19
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	17
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	397
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	397

## T

The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program.....	407
The Mediation and Arbitration Program.....	408
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	410
Tire Care.....	337
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	358
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview.....	357
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	358
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	357
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	359
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	359
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	360
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	359
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	332
Tire Rotation.....	343

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	346
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....	345
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	345
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	284
Towing a Trailer.....	284
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	298
Towing Your Vehicle.....	298
Traction Control Indicator.....	194
Traction Control.....	194
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	195
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	195
Traction Control – Information Messages.....	195
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	195
Transporting the Vehicle.....	297
Trip Computer.....	115
Trip Data.....	115

## U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	299
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	299
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	300
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	299
Under Hood Overview.....	309
USB Ports.....	140
Using Alexa Built-In.....	384
Using Auto Hold.....	193
Using Keyless Entry.....	72
Using Remote Start.....	116
Using Snow Chains.....	335
Using Summer Tires.....	334
Using the Backup Start Passcode.....	65
Using the Frunk Emergency Release.....	281
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	75
Using the Remote Control.....	60
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	347
Using the Valet Mode.....	65
Using This Publication.....	16
Using Winter Tires.....	335
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging.....	174

# Index

## V

Vehicle Care.....	317
Cleaning the Exterior.....	317
Cleaning the Interior.....	319
General Information.....	317
Vehicle Hotspot.....	369
Vehicle Identification Number.....	364
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	364
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	364
Vehicle Identification.....	364
Vehicle Identification Number.....	364
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	148
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Work.....	148
Overriding the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	148
Switching the Vehicle Power Down On and Off.....	148
What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	148
Vehicle Range Display.....	112
Vehicle Software Updates.....	397
Vehicle Specifications.....	316
Vehicle System Reset.....	399
Ventilated Seats.....	128
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	128
Ventilated Seat Precautions.....	128
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	117
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	359
Visual Search.....	27
Voice Interaction.....	382
Ford Assistant.....	382

## W

Walk Away Lock Limitations.....	77
Walk Away Lock.....	77
Warranty Information.....	472
Washers.....	93
Adding Washer Fluid.....	94

Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	94
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	94
Using the Windshield Washer.....	93
Washer Fluid Specification.....	94
Washer Precautions.....	93
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	91
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	321
Waypoints.....	395
Adding a Waypoint.....	395
Editing Waypoints.....	395
What Is 911 Assist.....	58
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	366
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	384
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	251
What Is BlueCruise.....	227
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	258
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	238
What Is Driver Alert.....	272
What Is Exit Warning.....	254
What Is Ford Protect.....	401
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	192
What Is Keyless Entry.....	72
What Is One Pedal Drive.....	242
What Is Phone as a Key.....	64
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	262
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	188
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	269
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	209
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	121
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	185
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating.....	276
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating.....	277
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.....	276
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	150
What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	74
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	243
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight.....	276
What Is the Memory Function.....	135
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	57

# Index

---

What Is the Personal Safety System.....	47
What Is the Power Outlet.....	143
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	132
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	207
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	357
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	345
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	144
What Is Traction Control.....	194
What is Walk Away Lock.....	77
Wheel and Tire Information.....	325
Wheel Nuts.....	362
Wi Fi	
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	366
Window Bounce-Back.....	106
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	106
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	106
Windows.....	105
Global Opening and Closing.....	105
Window Bounce-Back.....	106
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	95
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	95
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	95
Wipers and Washers Videos.....	95
Wipers and Washers.....	91
Autowipers.....	91
Reverse Wipe.....	92
Washers.....	93
Wipers.....	91
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	95
Wipers.....	91
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	91
Wiper Precautions.....	91
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	144
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	144



